Linux From Scratch

Table of Contents

Linux From Scratch.....1
- Gerard Beekmans.....1

Dedication.....2

Preface.....8

Who would want to read this book.....9

Who would not want to read this book.....10

Organization.....11
- Part I − Introduction.....11
- Part II − Installation of a basic system on Intel systems.....11
- Part III − Installation of a basic system on Apple PowerPC systems.....11
- Part IV − Appendixes.....11

I. Part I − Introduction.....12

Chapter 1. Introduction.....13

Introduction.....14

How things are going to be done.....15

Book versions.....16

Acknowledgements.....17

Changelog.....18

Mailinglists and archives.....26
- lfs−discuss.....26
- lfs−config.....26
- lfs−apps.....26
- lfs−announce.....27
- linux.....27
- alfs−discuss.....27
- How to subscribe?.....27
- How to unsubscribe?.....28
- Mail archives.....28

Contact information.....29

Chapter 2. Important information.....30

About $LFS.....31

Table of Contents

How to download the software......32

How to install the software......33

II. Part II − Installing LFS on Intel systems......35

Chapter 3. Packages you need to download......36

Chapter 4. Preparing a new partition......40

Introduction......41

Creating a new partition......42

Creating a ext2 file system on the new partition......43

Mounting the new partition......44

Creating directories......45

Chapter 5. Installing basic system software......46

How and why things are done......47

Debugging symbols and compiler optimizations......48

Preparing the LFS system......50

Installing Bash......51
- Installation of Bash......51
- Contents......51
- Description......51

Installing Binutils......52
- Installation of Binutils......52
- Description......52
- Description......52
  - ld......52
  - as......52
  - ar......52
  - nm......52
  - objcopy......53
  - objdump......53
  - ranlib......53
  - size......53
  - strings......53
  - strip......53
  - c++filt......53

Table of Contents

addr2line.....54
nlmconv.....54

Installing Bzip2.....55
Installation of Bzip2.....55
Contents.....55
Description.....55
Bzip2.....55
Bunzip2.....55
bzcat.....55
bzip2recover.....56

Installing Diffutils.....57
Installation of Diffutils.....57
Contents.....57
Description.....57
cmp and diff.....57
diff3.....57
sdiff.....57

Installing Fileutils.....58
Installation of Fileutils.....58
Contents.....58
Description.....58
chgrp.....58
chmod.....58
chown.....58
cp.....59
dd.....59
df.....59
ls, dir and vdir.....59
dircolors.....59
du.....59
install.....59
ln.....59
mkdir.....60
mkfifo.....60
mknod.....60
mv.....60
rm.....60
rmdir.....60
sync.....60
touch.....60

Installing GCC on the normal system if necessary.....61
Installation of GCC on the normal system if necessary.....61
Contents.....61
Description.....61

Table of Contents

Compiler....62
Pre−processor....62
C++ Library....62

Installing GCC on the LFS system....63
Installation of GCC on the LFS system....63
Creating necessary symlinks....63
Contents....63
Description....64
Compiler....64
Pre−processor....64
C++ Library....64

Installing Linux Kernel....65
Installation of Linux Kernel....65
Contents....65
Description....65

Installing Glibc....67
A note on the glibc−crypt package....67
Installation of Glibc....67
Copying old NSS library files....68
Contents....69
Description....69

Installing Grep....70
Installation of Grep....70
Contents....70
Description....70
egrep....70
fgrep....70
grep....70

Installing Gzip....71
Installation of Gzip....71
Contents....71
Description....71
gunzip....71
gzexe....72
gzip....72
zcat....72
zcmp....72
zdiff....72
zforce....72
zgrep....72
zmore....72
znew....73

Table of Contents

Installing Make **74**
Installation of Make 74
Contents 74
Description 74

Installing Sed **75**
Installation of Sed 75
Contents 75
Description 75

Installing Shellutils **76**
Installation of Shellutils 76
Contents 76
Description 76
basename 76
chroot 76
date 76
dirname 76
echo 77
env 77
expr 77
factor 77
false 77
groups 77
hostid 77
hostname 77
id 77
logname 78
nice 78
nohup 78
pathchk 78
pinky 78
printenv 78
printf 78
pwd 78
seq 78
sleep 79
stty 79
su 79
tee 79
test 79
true 79
tty 79
uname 79
uptime 79
users 80
who 80
whoami 80

Table of Contents

yes....80

Installing Tar....81
Installation of Tar....81
Contents....81
Description....81
tar....81
rmt....81

Installing Textutils....82
Installation of Textutils....82
Contents....82
Description....82
cat....82
cksum....82
comm....82
csplit....82
cut....83
expand....83
fmt....83
fold....83
head....83
join....83
md5sum....83
nl....83
od....83
paste....84
pr....84
ptx....84
sort....84
split....84
sum....84
tac....84
tail....84
tr....84
tsort....85
unexpand....85
uniq....85
wc....85

Creating passwd and group files....86

Copying /proc/devices....87

Installing basic system software....88

Entering the chroot'ed environment....89

Table of Contents

Creating device files....90
Installation of MAKEDEV....90
Creating the /dev entries....90

Installing GCC....91
Installation of GCC....91
Contents....91
Description....91
Compiler....91
Pre−processor....91
C++ Library....91

Installing Bison....93
Installation of Bison....93
Contents....93
Description....93

Installing Mawk....95
Installation of Mawk....95
Contents....95
Description....95
gawk....95

Installing Patch....96
Installation of Patch....96
Contents....96
Description....96

Installing Findutils....97
Installing Findutils....97
Contents....97
Description....97
Find....97
Locate....97
Updatedb....98
Xargs....98

Installing Ncurses....99
Installation of Ncurses....99
Contents....99
Description....99
The libraries....99
Tic....99
Infocmp....99
clear....100
tput....100
toe....100
tset....100

Table of Contents

Installing Less....101
Installation of Less....101
Contents....101
Description....101

Installing Groff....102
Installation of Groff....102
Contents....102
Description....102
addftinfo....102
afmtodit....102
eqn....102
grodvi....102
groff....103
grog....103
grohtml....103
grolj4....103
grops....103
grotty....103
hpftodit....103
indxbib....103
lkbib....103
lookbib....104
neqn....104
nroff....104
pfbtops....104
pic....104
psbb....104
refer....104
soelim....104
tbl....105
tfmtodit....105
troff....105

Installing Man....106
Installation of Man....106
Contents....106
Description....106
man....106
apropos....106
whatis....106
makewhatis....106

Installing Perl....107
Installation of Perl....107
Contents....107
Description....107

Table of Contents

Installing M4......108
Installation of M4......108
Contents......108
Description......108

Installing Texinfo......109
Installation of Texinfo......109
Contents......109
Description......109
info......109
install−info......109
makeinfo......109
texi2dvi......109
texindex......110

Installing Autoconf......111
Installation of Autoconf......111
Contents......111
Description......111
autoconf......111
autoheader......111
autoreconf......111
autoscan......111
autoupdate......112
ifnames......112

Installing Automake......113
Installation of Automake......113
Contents......113
Description......113
aclocal......113
automake......113

Installing Bash......114
Installation of Bash......114
Contents......114
Description......114

Installing Flex......115
Installation of Flex......115
Contents......115
Description......115

Installing File......116
Installation of File......116
Contents......116
Description......116

Table of Contents

Installing Libtool....117
Installation of Libtool....117
Contents....117
Description....117
libtool....117
libtoolize....117
ltdl library....117

Installing Bin86....118
Installation of Bin86....118
Contents....118
Description....118
as86....118
as86_encap....118
ld86....118
objdump86....118
nm86....119
size86....119

Installing Binutils....120
Installation of Binutils....120
Description....120
Description....120
ld....120
as....120
ar....120
nm....120
objcopy....121
objdump....121
ranlib....121
size....121
strings....121
strip....121
c++filt....121
addr2line....122
nlmconv....122

Installing Bzip2....123
Installation of Bzip2....123
Contents....123
Description....123
Bzip2....123
Bunzip2....124
bzcat....124
bzip2recover....124

Installing Gettext....125
Installation of Gettext....125

Table of Contents

Contents....125
Description....125
gettext....125

Installing Consoletools....126
Installation of Console−tools....126
Contents....126
Description....126
charset....126
chvt....126
codepage....127
consolechars....127
deallocvt....127
dumpkeys....127
fgconsole....127
fix_bs_and_del....127
font2psf....127
getkeycodes....127
kbd_mode....127
loadkeys....128
loadunimap....128
mapscrn....128
mk_modmap....128
openvt....128
psfaddtable....128
psfgettable....128
psfstriptable....128
resizecons....128
saveunimap....129
screendump....129
setfont....129
setkeycodes....129
setleds....129
setmetamode....129
setvesablank....129
showcfont....129
showkey....129
splitfont....130
unicode_start....130
unicode_stop....130
vcstime....130
vt−is−UTF8....130
writevt....130

Installing Consoledata....131
Installation of Console−data....131
Contents....131

Table of Contents

Installing Diffutils....132
Installation of Diffutils....132
Contents....132
Description....132
cmp and diff....132
diff3....132
sdiff....132

Installing E2fsprogs....133
Installation of E2fsprogs....133
Contents....133
Description....133
chattr....133
lsattr....133
uuidgen....133
badblocks....133
debugfs....134
dumpe2fs....134
e2fsck and fsck.ext2....134
e2label....134
fsck....134
mke2fs and mkfs.ext2....134
mklost+found....134
tune2fs....134

Installing Ed....135
Installation of Ed....135
Contents....135
Description....135

Installing Fileutils....136
Installation of Fileutils....136
Contents....136
Description....136
chgrp....136
chmod....136
chown....136
cp....137
dd....137
df....137
ls, dir and vdir....137
dircolors....137
du....137
install....137
ln....137
mkdir....138
mkfifo....138
mknod....138

Table of Contents

mv....138
rm....138
rmdir....138
sync....138
touch....138

Installing Grep....139
Installation of Grep....139
Contents....139
Description....139
egrep....139
fgrep....139
grep....139

Installing Gzip....140
Installation of Gzip....140
Contents....140
Description....140
gunzip....140
gzexe....140
gzip....140
zcat....141
zcmp....141
zdiff....141
zforce....141
zgrep....141
zmore....141
znew....141

Installing Ldso....142
Installation of Ld.so....142
Contents....142
Description....142
ldconfig....142
ldd....143

Installing Lilo....144
Installation of Lilo....144
Contents....144
Description....144

Installing Make....145
Installation of Make....145
Contents....145
Description....145

Installing Modutils....146
Installation of Modutils....146

Table of Contents

Contents....146
Description....146
depmod....146
genksyms....146
insmod....146
insmod_ksymoops_clean....146
kerneld....147
kernelversion....147
ksyms....147
lsmod....147
modinfo....147
modprobe....147
rmmod....147

Installing Procinfo....148
Installation of Procinfo....148
Contents....148
Description....148

Installing Procps....149
Installation of Procps....149
Contents....149
Description....149
free....149
kill....149
oldps and ps....149
skill....150
snice....150
sysctl....150
tload....150
top....150
uptime....150
vmstat....150
w....150
watch....150

Installing Psmisc....151
Installation of Psmisc....151
Contents....151
Description....151
fuser....151
killall....151
pstree....151

Installing Sed....152
Installation of Sed....152
Contents....152
Description....152

Table of Contents

Installing Shadowpwd....153
Installation of Shadow Password Suite....153
Contents....153
Description....153
chage....153
chfn....153
chsh....153
expiry....154
faillog....154
gpasswd....154
lastlog....154
login....154
newgrp....154
passwd....154
sg....154
su....154
chpasswd....155
dpasswd....155
groupadd....155
groupdel....155
groupmod....155
grpck....155
grpconv....155
grpunconv....155
logoutd....155
mkpasswd....156
newusers....156
pwck....156
pwconv....156
pwunconv....156
useradd....156
userdel....156
usermod....156
vipw and vigr....156

Installing Shellutils....157
Installation of Shell Utils....157
Contents....157
Description....157
basename....157
chroot....157
date....157
dirname....157
echo....158
env....158
expr....158
factor....158
false....158

Table of Contents

groups ... 158
hostid ... 158
hostname ... 158
id ... 158
logname ... 159
nice ... 159
nohup ... 159
pathchk ... 159
pinky ... 159
printenv ... 159
printf ... 159
pwd ... 159
seq ... 159
sleep ... 160
stty ... 160
su ... 160
tee ... 160
test ... 160
true ... 160
tty ... 160
uname ... 160
uptime ... 160
users ... 161
who ... 161
whoami ... 161
yes ... 161

Installing Vim ... 162
Installation of Vim ... 162
Contents ... 162
Description ... 162
ctags ... 162
etags ... 162
ex ... 162
gview ... 163
gvim ... 163
rgview ... 163
rgvim ... 163
rview ... 163
rvim ... 163
view ... 163
vim ... 163
vimtutor ... 163
xxd ... 164

Installing Sysklogd ... 165
Installation of Sysklogd ... 165
Contents ... 165

Table of Contents

Description 165
klogd 165
syslogd 165

Installing Sysvinit 166
Installation of Sysvinit 166
Contents 166
Description 166
pidof 166
last 166
lastb 166
mesg 166
utmpdump 167
wall 167
halt 167
init 167
killall5 167
poweroff 167
reboot 167
runlevel 167
shutdown 168
sulogin 168
telinit 168

Installing Tar 169
Installation of Tar 169
Contents 169
Description 169
tar 169
rmt 169

Installing Textutils 170
Installation of Textutils 170
Contents 170
Description 170
cat 170
cksum 170
comm 170
csplit 170
cut 171
expand 171
fmt 171
fold 171
head 171
join 171
md5sum 171
nl 171
od 171

Table of Contents

paste....172
pr....172
ptx....172
sort....172
split....172
sum....172
tac....172
tail....172
tr....172
tsort....173
unexpand....173
uniq....173
wc....173

Installing Utillinux....174
Installation of Util−Linux....174
Contents....174
Description....175
arch....175
dmesg....175
kill....175
more....175
mount....175
umount....175
agetty....175
blockdev....175
cfdisk....176
ctrlaltdel....176
elvtune....176
fdisk....176
fsck.minix....176
hwclock....176
kbdrate....176
losetup....176
mkfs....176
mkfs.bfs....177
mkfs.minix....177
mkswap....177
sfdisk....177
swapoff....177
swapon....177
cal....177
chkdupexe....177
col....177
colcrt....178
colrm....178
column....178
cytune....178

Table of Contents

ddate......178
fdformat......178
getopt......178
hexdump......178
ipcrm......178
ipcs......179
logger......179
look......179
mcookie......179
namei......179
rename......179
renice......179
rev......179
script......179
setfdprm......180
setsid......180
setterm......180
ul......180
whereis......180
write......180
ramsize......180
rdev......180
readprofile......180
rootflags......181
swapdev......181
tunelp......181
vidmode......181

Installing Man−pages......182
Installation of Man−pages......182
Contents......182
Description......182

Removing old NSS library files......183

Configuring essential software......184
Configuring Vim......184
Configuring Glibc......184
Configuring Dynamic Loader......185
Configuring Lilo......186
Configuring Sysklogd......186
Configuring Shadow Password Suite......187
Configuring Sysvinit......187
Creating the /var/run/utmp,wtmp and btmp files......188
Creating root password......188

Chapter 6. Creating system boot scripts......189

Table of Contents

What is being done here......190

Creating directories......191

Creating the rc script......192

Creating the rcS script......195

Creating the functions script......196

Creating the checkfs script......201

Creating the halt script......203

Creating the loadkeys script......204

Creating the mountfs script......205

Creating the reboot script......206

Creating the sendsignals script......207

Creating the setclock script......208
Creating the /etc/sysconfig/clock file......208

Creating the sysklogd script......210

Creating the umountfs script......212

Setting up symlinks and permissions......213

Creating the /etc/fstab file......214

Chapter 7. Setting up basic networking......215

Introduction......216

Installing network software......217
Installing Netkit−base......217
Installing Net−tools......217

Creating network boot scripts......218
Creating the /etc/init.d/localnet bootscript......218
Setting up permissions and symlink......218
Creating the /etc/sysconfig/network file......219
Creating the /etc/hosts file......219
Creating the /etc/init.d/ethnet script......220
Editing the /etc/sysconfig/network file......221

Table of Contents

Setting up permissions and symlink ... 221

Chapter 8. Making the LFS system bootable ... 222

Introduction ... 223

Installing a kernel ... 224

Adding an entry to LILO ... 225

Testing the system ... 226

III. Part III – Installing LFS on Apple PowerPC systems ... 227

Chapter 9. Packages you need to download ... 228

Chapter 10. Preparing a new partition ... 232

Introduction ... 233

Creating a new partition ... 234

Mounting the new partition ... 235

Creating directories ... 236

Chapter 11. Installing basic system software ... 237

How and why things are done ... 238

Debugging symbols and compiler optimizations ... 239

Preparing the LFS system ... 241

Installing Bash ... 242
Installation of Bash ... 242
Contents ... 242
Description ... 242

Installing Binutils ... 243
Installation of Binutils ... 243
Description ... 243
Description ... 243
ld ... 243
as ... 243
ar ... 243
nm ... 243
objcopy ... 244

Table of Contents

objdump....244
ranlib....244
size....244
strings....244
strip....244
c++filt....244
addr2line....245
nlmconv....245

Installing Bzip2....246
Installation of Bzip2....246
Contents....246
Description....246
Bzip2....246
Bunzip2....246
bzcat....246
bzip2recover....247

Installing Diffutils....248
Installation of Diffutils....248
Contents....248
Description....248
cmp and diff....248
diff3....248
sdiff....248

Installing Fileutils....249
Installation of Fileutils....249
Contents....249
Description....249
chgrp....249
chmod....249
chown....249
cp....250
dd....250
df....250
ls, dir and vdir....250
dircolors....250
du....250
install....250
ln....250
mkdir....251
mkfifo....251
mknod....251
mv....251
rm....251
rmdir....251
sync....251

Table of Contents

touch....251

Installing GCC on the normal system if necessary....252
Installation of GCC on the normal system if necessary....252
Contents....252
Description....252
Compiler....253
Pre−processor....253
C++ Library....253

Installing GCC on the LFS system....254
Installation of GCC on the LFS system....254
Creating necessary symlinks....254
Contents....254
Description....255
Compiler....255
Pre−processor....255
C++ Library....255

Installing Linux Kernel....256
Installation of Linux Kernel....256
Contents....256
Description....256

Installing Glibc....258
Contents....258
Description....258
A note on the glibc−crypt package....258
Installation of Glibc....258
Copying old NSS library files....260

Installing Grep....262
Installation of Grep....262
Contents....262
Description....262
egrep....262
fgrep....262
grep....262

Installing Gzip....263
Installation of Gzip....263
Contents....263
Description....263
gunzip....263
gzexe....264
gzip....264
zcat....264
zcmp....264

Table of Contents

zdiff....264
zforce....264
zgrep....264
zmore....264
znew....265

Installing Make....266
Installation of Make....266
Contents....266
Description....266

Installing Sed....267
Installation of Sed....267
Contents....267
Description....267

Installing Shellutils....268
Installation of Shellutils....268
Contents....268
Description....268
basename....268
chroot....268
date....268
dirname....268
echo....269
env....269
expr....269
factor....269
false....269
groups....269
hostid....269
hostname....269
id....269
logname....270
nice....270
nohup....270
pathchk....270
pinky....270
printenv....270
printf....270
pwd....270
seq....270
sleep....271
stty....271
su....271
tee....271
test....271
true....271

Table of Contents

tty....271
uname....271
uptime....271
users....272
who....272
whoami....272
yes....272

Installing Tar....273
Installation of Tar....273
Contents....273
Description....273
tar....273
rmt....273

Installing Textutils....274
Installation of Textutils....274
Contents....274
Description....274
cat....274
cksum....274
comm....274
csplit....274
cut....275
expand....275
fmt....275
fold....275
head....275
join....275
md5sum....275
nl....275
od....275
paste....276
pr....276
ptx....276
sort....276
split....276
sum....276
tac....276
tail....276
tr....276
tsort....277
unexpand....277
uniq....277
wc....277

Creating passwd and group files....278

Table of Contents

Copying /proc/devices....279

Installing basic system software....280

Entering the chroot'ed environment....281

Creating device files....282
- Installation of MAKEDEV....282
- Creating the /dev entries....282

Installing GCC....283
- Installation of GCC....283
- Contents....283
- Description....283
  - Compiler....283
  - Pre−processor....283
  - C++ Library....283

Installing Bison....285
- Installation of Bison....285
- Contents....285
- Description....285

Installing Mawk....287
- Installation of Mawk....287
- Contents....287
- Description....287
  - gawk....287

Installing Patch....288
- Installation of Patch....288
- Contents....288
- Description....288

Installing Findutils....289
- Installing Findutils....289
- Contents....289
- Description....289
  - Find....289
  - Locate....289
  - Updatedb....290
  - Xargs....290

Installing Ncurses....291
- Installation of Ncurses....291
- Contents....291
- Description....291
  - The libraries....291

Table of Contents

Tic....291
Infocmp....291
clear....292
tput....292
toe....292
tset....292

Installing Less....293
Installation of Less....293
Contents....293
Description....293

Installing Groff....294
Installation of Groff....294
Contents....294
Description....294
addftinfo....294
afmtodit....294
eqn....294
grodvi....294
groff....295
grog....295
grohtml....295
grolj4....295
grops....295
grotty....295
hpftodit....295
indxbib....295
lkbib....295
lookbib....296
neqn....296
nroff....296
pfbtops....296
pic....296
psbb....296
refer....296
soelim....296
tbl....297
tfmtodit....297
troff....297

Installing Man....298
Installation of Man....298
Contents....298
Description....298
man....298
apropos....298
whatis....298

Table of Contents

makewhatis....298

Installing Perl....299
Installation of Perl....299
Contents....299
Description....299

Installing M4....300
Installation of M4....300
Contents....300
Description....300

Installing Texinfo....301
Installation of Texinfo....301
Contents....301
Description....301
info....301
install−info....301
makeinfo....301
texi2dvi....301
texindex....302

Installing Autoconf....303
Installation of Autoconf....303
Contents....303
Description....303
autoconf....303
autoheader....303
autoreconf....303
autoscan....303
autoupdate....304
ifnames....304

Installing Automake....305
Installation of Automake....305
Contents....305
Description....305
aclocal....305
automake....305

Installing Bash....306
Installation of Bash....306
Contents....306
Description....306

Installing Flex....307
Installation of Flex....307
Contents....307

Table of Contents

Description....307

Installing File....308
Installation of File....308
Contents....308
Description....308

Installing Libtool....309
Installation of Libtool....309
Contents....309
Description....309
libtool....309
libtoolize....309
ltdl library....309

Installing Bin86....310
Installation of Bin86....310
Contents....310
Description....310
as86....310
as86_encap....310
ld86....310
objdump86....310
nm86....311
size86....311

Installing Binutils....312
Installation of Binutils....312
Description....312
Description....312
ld....312
as....312
ar....312
nm....312
objcopy....313
objdump....313
ranlib....313
size....313
strings....313
strip....313
c++filt....313
addr2line....314
nlmconv....314

Installing Bzip2....315
Installation of Bzip2....315
Contents....315
Description....315

Table of Contents

Bzip2......315
Bunzip2......316
bzcat......316
bzip2recover......316

Installing Gettext......317
Installation of Gettext......317
Contents......317
Description......317
gettext......317

Installing Consoletools......318
Installation of Console−tools......318
Contents......318
Description......318
charset......318
chvt......318
codepage......319
consolechars......319
deallocvt......319
dumpkeys......319
fgconsole......319
fix_bs_and_del......319
font2psf......319
getkeycodes......319
kbd_mode......319
loadkeys......320
loadunimap......320
mapscrn......320
mk_modmap......320
openvt......320
psfaddtable......320
psfgettable......320
psfstriptable......320
resizecons......320
saveunimap......321
screendump......321
setfont......321
setkeycodes......321
setleds......321
setmetamode......321
setvesablank......321
showcfont......321
showkey......321
splitfont......322
unicode_start......322
unicode_stop......322
vcstime......322

Table of Contents

vt–is–UTF8....322
writevt....322

Installing Consoledata....323
Installation of Console–data....323
Contents....323

Installing Diffutils....324
Installation of Diffutils....324
Contents....324
Description....324
cmp and diff....324
diff3....324
sdiff....324

Installing E2fsprogs....325
Installation of E2fsprogs....325
Contents....325
Description....325
chattr....325
lsattr....325
uuidgen....325
badblocks....325
debugfs....326
dumpe2fs....326
e2fsck and fsck.ext2....326
e2label....326
fsck....326
mke2fs and mkfs.ext2....326
mklost+found....326
tune2fs....326

Installing Ed....327
Installation of Ed....327
Contents....327
Description....327

Installing Fileutils....328
Installation of Fileutils....328
Contents....328
Description....328
chgrp....328
chmod....328
chown....328
cp....329
dd....329
df....329
ls, dir and vdir....329

Table of Contents

dircolors....329
du....329
install....329
ln....329
mkdir....330
mkfifo....330
mknod....330
mv....330
rm....330
rmdir....330
sync....330
touch....330

Installing Grep....331
Installation of Grep....331
Contents....331
Description....331
egrep....331
fgrep....331
grep....331

Installing Gzip....332
Installation of Gzip....332
Contents....332
Description....332
gunzip....332
gzexe....332
gzip....332
zcat....333
zcmp....333
zdiff....333
zforce....333
zgrep....333
zmore....333
znew....333

Installing Ldso....334
Installation of Ld.so....334
Contents....334
Description....334
ldconfig....334
ldd....335

Installing Make....336
Installation of Make....336
Contents....336
Description....336

Table of Contents

Installing Modutils......337
Installation of Modutils......337
Contents......337
Description......337
depmod......337
genksyms......337
insmod......337
insmod_ksymoops_clean......337
kerneld......338
kernelversion......338
ksyms......338
lsmod......338
modinfo......338
modprobe......338
rmmod......338

Installing Procinfo......339
Installation of Procinfo......339
Contents......339
Description......339

Installing Procps......340
Installation of Procps......340
Contents......340
Description......340
free......340
kill......340
oldps and ps......340
skill......341
snice......341
sysctl......341
tload......341
top......341
uptime......341
vmstat......341
w......341
watch......341

Installing Psmisc......342
Installation of Psmisc......342
Contents......342
Description......342
fuser......342
killall......342
pstree......342

Installing Sed......343
Installation of Sed......343

Table of Contents

Contents....343
Description....343

Installing Shadowpwd....344
Installation of Shadow Password Suite....344
Contents....344
Description....344
chage....344
chfn....344
chsh....344
expiry....345
faillog....345
gpasswd....345
lastlog....345
login....345
newgrp....345
passwd....345
sg....345
su....345
chpasswd....346
dpasswd....346
groupadd....346
groupdel....346
groupmod....346
grpck....346
grpconv....346
grpunconv....346
logoutd....346
mkpasswd....347
newusers....347
pwck....347
pwconv....347
pwunconv....347
useradd....347
userdel....347
usermod....347
vipw and vigr....347

Installing Shellutils....348
Installation of Shell Utils....348
Contents....348
Description....348
basename....348
chroot....348
date....348
dirname....348
echo....349
env....349

Table of Contents

expr ... 349
factor ... 349
false ... 349
groups ... 349
hostid ... 349
hostname ... 349
id ... 349
logname ... 350
nice ... 350
nohup ... 350
pathchk ... 350
pinky ... 350
printenv ... 350
printf ... 350
pwd ... 350
seq ... 350
sleep ... 351
stty ... 351
su ... 351
tee ... 351
test ... 351
true ... 351
tty ... 351
uname ... 351
uptime ... 351
users ... 352
who ... 352
whoami ... 352
yes ... 352

Installing Vim ... 353
Installation of Vim ... 353
Contents ... 353
Description ... 353
ctags ... 353
etags ... 353
ex ... 353
gview ... 354
gvim ... 354
rgview ... 354
rgvim ... 354
rview ... 354
rvim ... 354
view ... 354
vim ... 354
vimtutor ... 354
xxd ... 355

Table of Contents

Installing Sysklogd 356
- Installation of Sysklogd 356
- Contents 356
- Description 356
  - klogd 356
  - syslogd 356

Installing Sysvinit 357
- Installation of Sysvinit 357
- Contents 357
- Description 357
  - pidof 357
  - last 357
  - lastb 357
  - mesg 357
  - utmpdump 358
  - wall 358
  - halt 358
  - init 358
  - killall5 358
  - poweroff 358
  - reboot 358
  - runlevel 358
  - shutdown 359
  - sulogin 359
  - telinit 359

Installing Tar 360
- Installation of Tar 360
- Contents 360
- Description 360
  - tar 360
  - rmt 360

Installing Textutils 361
- Installation of Textutils 361
- Contents 361
- Description 361
  - cat 361
  - cksum 361
  - comm 361
  - csplit 361
  - cut 362
  - expand 362
  - fmt 362
  - fold 362
  - head 362
  - join 362

Table of Contents

md5sum....362
nl....362
od....362
paste....363
pr....363
ptx....363
sort....363
split....363
sum....363
tac....363
tail....363
tr....363
tsort....364
unexpand....364
uniq....364
wc....364

Installing Utillinux....365
Installation of Util−Linux....365
Contents....365
Description....366
arch....366
dmesg....366
kill....366
more....366
mount....366
umount....366
agetty....366
blockdev....366
cfdisk....367
ctrlaltdel....367
elvtune....367
fdisk....367
fsck.minix....367
hwclock....367
kbdrate....367
losetup....367
mkfs....367
mkfs.bfs....368
mkfs.minix....368
mkswap....368
sfdisk....368
swapoff....368
swapon....368
cal....368
chkdupexe....368
col....368
colcrt....369

Table of Contents

colrm....369
column....369
cytune....369
ddate....369
fdformat....369
getopt....369
hexdump....369
ipcrm....369
ipcs....370
logger....370
look....370
mcookie....370
namei....370
rename....370
renice....370
rev....370
script....370
setfdprm....371
setsid....371
setterm....371
ul....371
whereis....371
write....371
ramsize....371
rdev....371
readprofile....371
rootflags....372
swapdev....372
tunelp....372
vidmode....372

Installation of Pmac−utils....373

Installing Man−pages....374
Installation of Man−pages....374
Contents....374
Description....374

Removing old NSS library files....375

Configuring essential software....376
Configuring Vim....376
Configuring Glibc....376
Configuring Dynamic Loader....377
Configuring Sysklogd....378
Configuring Shadow Password Suite....378
Configuring Sysvinit....378
Creating the /var/run/utmp,wtmp and btmp files....379

Table of Contents

Creating root password.....379

Chapter 12. Creating system boot scripts.....381

What is being done here.....382

Creating directories.....383

Creating the rc script.....384

Creating the rcS script.....387

Creating the functions script.....388

Creating the checkfs script.....393

Creating the halt script.....395

Creating the loadkeys script.....396

Creating the mountfs script.....397

Creating the reboot script.....398

Creating the sendsignals script.....399

Creating the setclock script.....400

Creating the sysklogd script.....401

Creating the umountfs script.....403

Setting up symlinks and permissions.....404

Creating the /etc/fstab file.....405

Chapter 13. Setting up basic networking.....406

Introduction.....407

Installing network software.....408
Installing Netkit−base.....408
Installing Net−tools.....408

Creating network boot scripts.....409
Creating the /etc/init.d/localnet bootscript.....409
Setting up permissions and symlink.....409
Creating the /etc/sysconfig/network file.....410

Table of Contents

Creating the /etc/hosts file....410
Creating the /etc/init.d/ethnet script....411
Editing the /etc/sysconfig/network file....412
Setting up permissions and symlink....412

Chapter 14. Making the LFS system bootable....413

Introduction....414

Installing a kernel....415

Updating BootX....416

Testing the system....417

IV. Part IV − Appendixes....418

Appendix A. Package descriptions....419

Introduction....420

Glibc....421
Contents....421
Description....421

Linux kernel....422
Contents....422
Description....422

Ed....423
Contents....423
Description....423

Patch....424
Contents....424
Description....424

GCC....425
Contents....425
Description....425
Compiler....425
Pre−processor....425
C++ Library....425

Bison....426
Contents....426
Description....426

Table of Contents

Mawk 427
Contents 427
Description 427
gawk 427

Findutils 428
Contents 428
Description 428
Find 428
Locate 428
Updatedb 428
Xargs 428

Ncurses 429
Contents 429
Description 429
The libraries 429
Tic 429
Infocmp 429
clear 429
tput 429
toe 430
tset 430

Less 431
Contents 431
Description 431

Groff 432
Contents 432
Description 432
addftinfo 432
afmtodit 432
eqn 432
grodvi 432
groff 432
grog 432
grohtml 433
grolj4 433
grops 433
grotty 433
hpftodit 433
indxbib 433
lkbib 433
lookbib 433
neqn 434
nroff 434
pfbtops 434

Table of Contents

pic ... 434
psbb ... 434
refer ... 434
soelim ... 434
tbl ... 434
tfmtodit ... 435
troff ... 435

Man ... 436
Contents ... 436
Description ... 436
man ... 436
apropos ... 436
whatis ... 436
makewhatis ... 436

Perl ... 437
Contents ... 437
Description ... 437

M4 ... 438
Contents ... 438
Description ... 438

Texinfo ... 439
Contents ... 439
Description ... 439
info ... 439
install–info ... 439
makeinfo ... 439
texi2dvi ... 439
texindex ... 439

Autoconf ... 440
Contents ... 440
Description ... 440
autoconf ... 440
autoheader ... 440
autoreconf ... 440
autoscan ... 440
autoupdate ... 440
ifnames ... 440

Automake ... 442
Contents ... 442
Description ... 442
aclocal ... 442
automake ... 442

Table of Contents

Bash ... **443**
Contents ... 443
Description ... 443

Flex ... **444**
Contents ... 444
Description ... 444

Binutils ... **445**
Description ... 445
Description ... 445
ld ... 445
as ... 445
ar ... 445
nm ... 445
objcopy ... 445
objdump ... 445
ranlib ... 446
size ... 446
strings ... 446
strip ... 446
c++filt ... 446
addr2line ... 446
nlmconv ... 447

Bzip2 ... **448**
Contents ... 448
Description ... 448
Bzip2 ... 448
Bunzip2 ... 448
bzcat ... 448
bzip2recover ... 448

Diffutils ... **449**
Contents ... 449
Description ... 449
cmp and diff ... 449
diff3 ... 449
sdiff ... 449

E2fsprogs ... **450**
Contents ... 450
Description ... 450
chattr ... 450
lsattr ... 450
uuidgen ... 450
badblocks ... 450
debugfs ... 450

Table of Contents

dumpe2fs....450
e2fsck and fsck.ext2....451
e2label....451
fsck....451
mke2fs and mkfs.ext2....451
mklost+found....451
tune2fs....451

File....452
Contents....452
Description....452

Fileutils....453
Contents....453
Description....453
chgrp....453
chmod....453
chown....453
cp....453
dd....453
df....453
ls, dir and vdir....454
dircolors....454
du....454
install....454
ln....454
mkdir....454
mkfifo....454
mknod....454
mv....455
rm....455
rmdir....455
sync....455
touch....455

Gettext....456
Contents....456
Description....456
gettext....456

Grep....457
Contents....457
Description....457
egrep....457
fgrep....457
grep....457

Gzip....458

Table of Contents

Contents....458
Description....458
gunzip....458
gzexe....458
gzip....458
zcat....458
zcmp....458
zdiff....458
zforce....458
zgrep....459
zmore....459
znew....459

Ld.so....460
Contents....460
Description....460
ldconfig....460
ldd....460

Libtool....461
Contents....461
Description....461
libtool....461
libtoolize....461
ltdl library....461

Bin86....462
Contents....462
Description....462
as86....462
as86_encap....462
ld86....462
objdump86....462
nm86....462
size86....462

Lilo....463
Contents....463
Description....463

Make....464
Contents....464
Description....464

Shellutils....465
Contents....465
Description....465
basename....465

Table of Contents

chroot 465
date 465
dirname 465
echo 465
env 465
expr 465
factor 466
false 466
groups 466
hostid 466
hostname 466
id 466
logname 466
nice 466
nohup 466
pathchk 467
pinky 467
printenv 467
printf 467
pwd 467
seq 467
sleep 467
stty 467
su 467
tee 468
test 468
true 468
tty 468
uname 468
uptime 468
users 468
who 468
whoami 468
yes 469

Shadow Password Suite 470
Contents 470
Description 470
chage 470
chfn 470
chsh 470
expiry 470
faillog 470
gpasswd 470
lastlog 470
login 471
newgrp 471
passwd 471

Table of Contents

sg....471
su....471
chpasswd....471
dpasswd....471
groupadd....471
groupdel....472
groupmod....472
grpck....472
grpconv....472
grpunconv....472
logoutd....472
mkpasswd....472
newusers....472
pwck....472
pwconv....473
pwunconv....473
useradd....473
userdel....473
usermod....473
vipw and vigr....473

Modutils....474
Contents....474
Description....474
depmod....474
genksyms....474
insmod....474
insmod_ksymoops_clean....474
kerneld....474
kernelversion....474
ksyms....474
lsmod....475
modinfo....475
modprobe....475
rmmod....475

Procinfo....476
Contents....476
Description....476

Procps....477
Contents....477
Description....477
free....477
kill....477
oldps and ps....477
skill....477
snice....477

Table of Contents

sysctl....477
tload....477
top....478
uptime....478
vmstat....478
w....478
watch....478

Vim....479
Contents....479
Description....479
ctags....479
etags....479
ex....479
gview....479
gvim....479
rgview....479
rgvim....479
rview....480
rvim....480
view....480
vim....480
vimtutor....480
xxd....480

Psmisc....481
Contents....481
Description....481
fuser....481
killall....481
pstree....481

Sed....482
Contents....482
Description....482

Sysklogd....483
Contents....483
Description....483
klogd....483
syslogd....483

Sysvinit....484
Contents....484
Description....484
pidof....484
last....484
lastb....484

Table of Contents

mesg....484
utmpdump....484
wall....484
halt....485
init....485
killall5....485
poweroff....485
reboot....485
runlevel....485
shutdown....485
sulogin....485
telinit....486

Tar....487
Contents....487
Description....487
tar....487
rmt....487

Textutils....488
Contents....488
Description....488
cat....488
cksum....488
comm....488
csplit....488
cut....488
expand....488
fmt....488
fold....489
head....489
join....489
md5sum....489
nl....489
od....489
paste....489
pr....489
ptx....489
sort....490
split....490
sum....490
tac....490
tail....490
tr....490
tsort....490
unexpand....490
uniq....490
wc....491

Table of Contents

Util Linux......492
Contents......492
Description......492
arch......492
dmesg......492
kill......492
more......492
mount......492
umount......492
agetty......493
blockdev......493
cfdisk......493
ctrlaltdel......493
elvtune......493
fdisk......493
fsck.minix......493
hwclock......493
kbdrate......493
losetup......494
mkfs......494
mkfs.bfs......494
mkfs.minix......494
mkswap......494
sfdisk......494
swapoff......494
swapon......494
cal......494
chkdupexe......495
col......495
colcrt......495
colrm......495
column......495
cytune......495
ddate......495
fdformat......495
getopt......495
hexdump......496
ipcrm......496
ipcs......496
logger......496
look......496
mcookie......496
namei......496
rename......496
renice......496
rev......497
script......497
setfdprm......497

Table of Contents

setsid....497
setterm....497
ul....497
whereis....497
write....497
ramsize....497
rdev....498
readprofile....498
rootflags....498
swapdev....498
tunelp....498
vidmode....498

Console−tools....499
Contents....499
Description....499
charset....499
chvt....499
codepage....499
consolechars....499
deallocvt....499
dumpkeys....499
fgconsole....500
fix_bs_and_del....500
font2psf....500
getkeycodes....500
kbd_mode....500
loadkeys....500
loadunimap....500
mapscrn....500
mk_modmap....500
openvt....501
psfaddtable....501
psfgettable....501
psfstriptable....501
resizecons....501
saveunimap....501
screendump....501
setfont....501
setkeycodes....501
setleds....502
setmetamode....502
setvesablank....502
showcfont....502
showkey....502
splitfont....502
unicode_start....502
unicode_stop....502

Table of Contents

vcstime....502
vt−is−UTF8....503
writevt....503

Console−data....504
Contents....504

Man−pages....505
Contents....505
Description....505

Appendix B. Resources....506

Introduction....507

Books....508

HOWTOs and Guides....509

Other....510

Linux From Scratch

Gerard Beekmans

This book describes the process of creating your own Linux system from scratch from an already installed Linux distribution, using nothing but the sources of software that are needed.

Dedication

This book is dedicated to my loving and supportive wife *Beverly Beekmans*.

Table of Contents

Preface
- *Who would want to read this book*
- *Who would not want to read this book*
- *Organization*
  - *Part I − Introduction*
  - *Part II − Installation of a basic system on Intel systems*
  - *Part III − Installation of a basic system on Apple PowerPC systems*
  - *Part IV − Appendixes*

I. Part I − Introduction
- *1. Introduction*
  - *Introduction*
  - *How things are going to be done*
  - *Book versions*
  - *Acknowledgements*
  - *Changelog*
  - *Mailinglists and archives*
  - *Contact information*
- *2. Important information*
  - *About $LFS*
  - *How to download the software*
  - *How to install the software*

II. Part II − Installing LFS on Intel systems
- *3. Packages you need to download*
- *4. Preparing a new partition*
  - *Introduction*
  - *Creating a new partition*
  - *Creating a ext2 file system on the new partition*
  - *Mounting the new partition*
  - *Creating directories*
- *5. Installing basic system software*
  - *How and why things are done*
  - *Debugging symbols and compiler optimizations*
  - *Preparing the LFS system*
  - *Installing Bash*
  - *Installing Binutils*
  - *Installing Bzip2*
  - *Installing Diffutils*
  - *Installing Fileutils*
  - *Installing GCC on the normal system if necessary*
  - *Installing GCC on the LFS system*
  - *Installing Linux Kernel*
  - *Installing Glibc*
  - *Installing Grep*
  - *Installing Gzip*
  - *Installing Make*

Installing Sed
Installing Shellutils
Installing Tar
Installing Textutils
Creating passwd and group files
Copying /proc/devices
Installing basic system software
Entering the chroot'ed environment
Creating device files
Installing GCC
Installing Bison
Installing Mawk
Installing Patch
Installing Findutils
Installing Ncurses
Installing Less
Installing Groff
Installing Man
Installing Perl
Installing M4
Installing Texinfo
Installing Autoconf
Installing Automake
Installing Bash
Installing Flex
Installing File
Installing Libtool
Installing Bin86
Installing Binutils
Installing Bzip2
Installing Gettext
Installing Consoletools
Installing Consoledata
Installing Diffutils
Installing E2fsprogs
Installing Ed
Installing Fileutils
Installing Grep
Installing Gzip
Installing Ldso
Installing Lilo
Installing Make
Installing Modutils
Installing Procinfo
Installing Procps
Installing Psmisc
Installing Sed
Installing Shadowpwd
Installing Shellutils
Installing Vim
Installing Sysklogd

Installing Sysvinit
Installing Tar
Installing Textutils
Installing Utillinux
Installing Man−pages
Removing old NSS library files
Configuring essential software
6. Creating system boot scripts
What is being done here
Creating directories
Creating the rc script
Creating the rcS script
Creating the functions script
Creating the checkfs script
Creating the halt script
Creating the loadkeys script
Creating the mountfs script
Creating the reboot script
Creating the sendsignals script
Creating the setclock script
Creating the sysklogd script
Creating the umountfs script
Setting up symlinks and permissions
Creating the /etc/fstab file
7. Setting up basic networking
Introduction
Installing network software
Creating network boot scripts
8. Making the LFS system bootable
Introduction
Installing a kernel
Adding an entry to LILO
Testing the system
III. Part III − Installing LFS on Apple PowerPC systems
9. Packages you need to download
10. Preparing a new partition
Introduction
Creating a new partition
Mounting the new partition
Creating directories
11. Installing basic system software
How and why things are done
Debugging symbols and compiler optimizations
Preparing the LFS system
Installing Bash
Installing Binutils
Installing Bzip2
Installing Diffutils
Installing Fileutils
Installing GCC on the normal system if necessary
Installing GCC on the LFS system

Installing Linux Kernel
Installing Glibc
Installing Grep
Installing Gzip
Installing Make
Installing Sed
Installing Shellutils
Installing Tar
Installing Textutils
Creating passwd and group files
Copying /proc/devices
Installing basic system software
Entering the chroot'ed environment
Creating device files
Installing GCC
Installing Bison
Installing Mawk
Installing Patch
Installing Findutils
Installing Ncurses
Installing Less
Installing Groff
Installing Man
Installing Perl
Installing M4
Installing Texinfo
Installing Autoconf
Installing Automake
Installing Bash
Installing Flex
Installing File
Installing Libtool
Installing Bin86
Installing Binutils
Installing Bzip2
Installing Gettext
Installing Consoletools
Installing Consoledata
Installing Diffutils
Installing E2fsprogs
Installing Ed
Installing Fileutils
Installing Grep
Installing Gzip
Installing Ldso
Installing Make
Installing Modutils
Installing Procinfo
Installing Procps
Installing Psmisc
Installing Sed

Installing Shadowpwd
Installing Shellutils
Installing Vim
Installing Sysklogd
Installing Sysvinit
Installing Tar
Installing Textutils
Installing Utillinux
Installation of Pmac−utils
Installing Man−pages
Removing old NSS library files
Configuring essential software
12. Creating system boot scripts
What is being done here
Creating directories
Creating the rc script
Creating the rcS script
Creating the functions script
Creating the checkfs script
Creating the halt script
Creating the loadkeys script
Creating the mountfs script
Creating the reboot script
Creating the sendsignals script
Creating the setclock script
Creating the sysklogd script
Creating the umountfs script
Setting up symlinks and permissions
Creating the /etc/fstab file
13. Setting up basic networking
Introduction
Installing network software
Creating network boot scripts
14. Making the LFS system bootable
Introduction
Installing a kernel
Updating BootX
Testing the system
IV. Part IV − Appendixes
A. Package descriptions
Introduction
Glibc
Linux kernel
Ed
Patch
GCC
Bison
Mawk
Findutils
Ncurses
Less

Groff
Man
Perl
M4
Texinfo
Autoconf
Automake
Bash
Flex
Binutils
Bzip2
Diffutils
E2fsprogs
File
Fileutils
Gettext
Grep
Gzip
Ld.so
Libtool
Bin86
Lilo
Make
Shellutils
Shadow Password Suite
Modutils
Procinfo
Procps
Vim
Psmisc
Sed
Sysklogd
Sysvinit
Tar
Textutils
Util Linux
Console−tools
Console−data
Man−pages
B. Resources
Introduction
Books
HOWTOs and Guides
Other

Preface

Who would want to read this book

This book is intended for Linux users who want to learn more about the inner workings of Linux and how the various pieces of the Operating System fit together. This book will guide you step−by−step in creating your own custom build Linux system from scratch, using nothing but the sources of software that are needed.

This book is also intended for Linux users who want to get away from the existing commercial and free distributions that are often too bloated. Using existing distributions also forces you to use the file system structure, boot script structure, etc. that they choose to use. With this book you can create your own structures and methods in exactly the way you like them (which can be based on the ones this book provides)

Also, if you have security concerns, you don't want to rely on pre−compiled packages. So instead, you want to compile all programs from scratch and install them yourself. That could be another reason why you would want to build a custom made Linux system.

Those are just a few out of many reasons why people want to build their own Linux system. If you're one of those people, this book is meant for you.

Who would not want to read this book

Users who don't want to build an entire Linux system from scratch probably don't want to read this book. If you, however, do want to learn more about what happens behind the scenes, in particulair what happens between turning on your computer and seeing the command prompt, you want to read the "From Power Up To Bash Prompt" (P2B) HOWTO. This HOWTO builds a bare system, in a similar way as this book does, but it focusses more on just installing a bootable system instead of a complete system.

To decide whether you want to read this book or the P2B HOWTO, you could ask yourself this question: Is my main objective to get a working Linux system that I'm going to build myself and along the way learn and learn what every component of a system is for, or is just the learning part your main objective. If you want to build and learn, read this book. If you just want to learn, then the P2B HOWTO is probably better material to read.

The "From Power Up To Bash Prompt" HOWTO can be downloaded from http://learning.taslug.org.au/power2bash

Organization

This book is devided into the following parts. Although there is a lot of duplicate information in certain parts, it's the easiest way to read it and not to mention the easiest way for me to maintain the book.

Part I − Introduction

Part One gives you general information about this book (versions, where to get it, changelog, mailinglists and how to get in touch with me). It also explains a few important aspects you really want and need to read before you start building an LFS system.

Part II − Installation of a basic system on Intel systems

Part Two guides you through the installation of a basic system on Intel systems which will be the foundation for the rest of the system. Whatever you choose to do with your brand new LFS system, it will be built on the foundation that's installed in this part.

Part III − Installation of a basic system on Apple PowerPC systems

Part Three is the Apple PowerPC version of part two.

Part IV − Appendixes

Part Four contains various Appendixes.

I. Part I – Introduction

Table of Contents

1. Introduction
2. Important information

Chapter 1. Introduction

Introduction

Having used a number of different Linux distributions, I was never fully satisfied with any of those. I didn't like the way the bootscripts were arranged, or I didn't like the way certain programs were configured by default and more of those things. I came to realize that when I want to be totally satisfied with a Linux system, I have to build my own Linux system from scratch, ideally only using the source code. Not using pre−compiled packages of any kind. No help from some sort of cdrom or bootdisk that would install some basic utilities. You would use your current Linux system and use that one to build your own.

This, at one time, wild idea seemed very difficult and at times almost impossible. The reason for most problems were due to my lack of knowledge about certain programs and procedures. After sorting out all kinds of dependency problems, compilation problems, etcetera, a custom built Linux system was created and fully operational. I called this system an LFS system, which stands for LinuxFromScratch.

How things are going to be done

We are going to build the LFS system using an already installed Linux distribution such as Debian, SuSe, Slackware, Mandrake, RedHat, etc. You don't need to have any kind of bootdisk. We will use an existing Linux system as the base (since we need a compiler, linker, text editor and other tools).

If you don't have Linux installed yet, you won't be able to put this book to use right away. I suggest you first install a Linux distribution. It really doesn't matter which one you install. It also doesn't need to be the latest version, though it shouldn't be a too old one. If it is about a year old or newer it should do just fine. You will safe yourself a lot of trouble if your normal system uses glibc−2.0 or newer. Libc5 isn't supported by this book, though it isn't impossible to use a libc5 system if you have no choice.

Book versions

This is the 2.3.7 development version dated August 3rd, 2000. If this version is older than a month you definitely want to take a look at our website and download a newer version.

The latest versions of this book and related files can be downloaded from one of the following sites. Please avoid the main site at Dallas whenever possible.

- Dallas, Texas, United States – http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/index2.html
- Columbus, Ohio, United States – http://lfs.bcpub.com/index2.html
- United States – http://lfs.sourceforge.net/index2.html
- Braunschweig, Niedersachsen, Germany – http://134.169.139.209/index2.html
- Brisbane, Queensland, Australia – http://lfs.mirror.aarnet.edu.au/index2.html
- France – http://www.linuxien.com/lfs/index2.html

Acknowledgements

I would like to thank the following people and organizations for their contributions towards the LinuxFromScratch project:

- Paul Jensen for providing http://www.pcrdallas.com as the main linuxfromscratch.org host
- Bryan Dumm for providing http://www.bcpub.com as the lfs.bcpub.com mirror
- Jan Niemann for providing http://helga.lk.etc.tu−bs.de as the 134.169.139.209 mirror
- Jason Andrade for providing http://mirror.aarnet.edu.au as the lfs.mirror.aarnet.edu.au mirror
- Johan Lenglet for providing http://www.linuxien.com/ as the www.linuxien.com/lfs/ mirror
- Michael Peters for contributing the Apple PowerPC modifications
- VA Linux Systems who, on behalf of Linux.com, donated a VA Linux 420 (formerly StartX SP2) workstation towards this project
- Jesse Tie Ten Quee who donated a Yamaha CDRW 8824E CD−RW.
- Countless other people from the various LFS mailinglists who are making this book happen by making suggestions, testing and submitting bug reports.

Changelog

If, for example, a change is listed for chapter 5 it (usually) means the same change has been done in the chapters for the other architectures.

j.3.7 – August 3rd, 2000

- All chapters: Removed the <blockquote> SGML tags so that the contents of files isn't indented anymore. This improves the easy of copy and pasting from the book into your files without needing to manually reformat the files to get rid of the indentations.
- Chapter 4: Added var/tmp to the "chmod 1777 tmp usr/tmp" command.
- Chapter 4: Made mkdir commands less repetitive by putting the creation of the directories in $LFS/usr and $LFS/usr/local in a for−loop.
- Chapter 5: Moved the chmod 754 command for MAKEDEV after the sed operation.
- Chapter 5: Changed the order in which packages are installed to conform more to a alphabetically ordering.
- Chapter 5: After console−tools has been installed the /usr/share/defkeymap.kmap.gz file is created which will be used by the loadkeys script.
- Chapter 5: Removed "gcc −c watch.c" from "Installing Procps". Please let us know if this is still needed on certain hardware.
- Chapter 5: For an unknown reason Ncurses does not always create the /lib/libcurses* symbolic links. So we have to add them manually in case they're missing.
- Chapter 5: Added the /usr/bin/install symbolic link as it seems that at least one package (sysklogd) has the install location hard coded in it's Makefile file.
- Chapter 5: After gettext has been installed, we have a file /po−mode.el. This file will be moved to /usr/share/gettext where it probably belongs.
- Chapter 5: Instead of passing −−with−root−prefix=/ to e2fsprogs' configure script, we now pass −−with−root−prefix=
-

Chapter 5: When gzip is installed and the files moved to /bin the hard link between the files is removed. So we just move gzip to /bin and create a symlink between gzip and gunzip.

- Chapter 5: In the chroot environment: changed the installation order of a few packages who's dependencies have changed over time.
- Chapter 5: inittab file has been slightly updated to better support the single user run level. When you change to run level S, s or 1 it will do it's job properly now.
- Chapter 6: Fixed typo in the rc script (! −f sysinit_start −> ! −f $sysinit_start).
- Chapter 6: Changed the loadkeys command in the loadkeys script. New command is: loadkeys −d which loads the /usr/share/keymaps/defkeymap.kmap.gz file.
- Chapter 6: Changed ". /etc/init.d/functions" into "source /etc/init.d/functions".
- Chapter 6: Removed the "rm /fastboot" command from the checkfs script.

j.3.6 − July 19th, 2000

- Chapter 3: Re−ordered the software download list so it once again matches the order in which packages are used (the first package listed in the list is the first package that we will be using in the book, the second listed package will be the second package used in the book, etc).
- Chapter 3: Added the file sizes of the packages you have to download.
- Chapter 3: Removed the start−stop−daemon package.
- Chapter 3: Added the findutils and glibc patches to the package list.
- Chapter 3: Added the man−pages package to the package list.
- Chapter 4: Moved the creation of the $LFS/dev/ files to chapter 5 after we have entered the chroot environment. This is done because GID's on normal system and LFS system might differ and the MAKEDEV script depends on the GID's.
- Chapter 5: Added the installation of the man−pages package.
-

Chapter 5: Added a few commonly used groups to the /etc/group file when it is created (these are the groups needed by the MAKEDEV script).

- Chapter 5: The /proc/devices file is copied to $LFS/proc for the benefit of the MAKEDEV script. The presence of this file ensures the proper creation of the device files.
- Chapter 5: Layout changes. Every package installation has it's own page now. Also the text from appendixa for every package is included with the installation instructions so you can read what a package is about during (or after or before) the installation of it.
- Chapter 5: Removed the patches for diffutils, grep, gzip and sed that used to fix static link problems. The problems can be fixed by passing compile arguments to the C pre−processor (cpp) instead.
- Chapter 5: Added the −−disable−termcap option to configure to disable termcap backward compatibility (if you want to know why termcap isn't used anymore, please read the INSTALL file that comes with the Ncurses package).
- Chapter 5: Added a few missing files from the fileutils package to the "mv" commands.
- Chapter 5: Removed the installation of the start−stop−daemon package.
- Chapter 5: Removed the −e parameters from the make command lines.
- Chapter 5: Instead of editing the procinfo, procps and psmisc Makefile files with a text editor, the sed command it used.
- Chapter 6: Added the setclock script in case your hardware clock isn't set to GMT.
- Chapter 6: Removed the use of the start−stop−daemon program and replaced them with custom functions that use programs like pidof and kill to accomplish the same tasks but with more control over what happens.
- Chapter 6: Added the loadproc and killproc functions to the /etc/init.d/functions file that take over the functions the start−stop−daemon program used to perform.
- Chapter 6: When the checkfs script runs without errors it now prints a green OK.
-

Chapter 6: When /fastboot or /forcefsck exist, they won't be deleted from within the checkfs script but from within the mountfs script as soon as the root partition has been remounted in read−write mode.

- Chapter 6 & 7: Instead of sourcing a file with ". /etc/init.d/functions", "source /etc/init.d/functions" is now used. This makes it easier to read and is clearer for persons who don't know much about scripting.
- Appendix A: removed start−stop−daemon.
- Appendix B: Removed a few unrelated items from the book and howto sections (the references to Sendmail and ISP−Hookup−HOWTO).

j.3.5 − June 19th, 2000

- Chapter 3: Updated LILO download location
- Chapter 3: Updated Shadow Password Suite download location
- Chapter 3: Updated the Flex download location
- Chapter 3: Updated the File download location
- Chapter 3: Added netkit−base and net−tools to the mandatory packages section
- Chapter 5: A glibc−2.1.3 patch is available if you have problems compiling glibc on a bash−2.04 machine.
- Chapter 5: Added compiler optimization
- Chapter 5: Added the creation of the root password to "Configuring essential software"
- Chapter 5: The Linux86 package has been replaced by the Bin86 package.
- Chapter 5: Included information on how to optimize compilations.
-

Chapter 5: Moved installation of Groff and Man before Perl. This way Perl known how to install man pages and where to install them.

- Chapter 5: Changed GCC's local−prefix option to /usr/local instead of /usr (this was still a residue from the time where /usr/local was a symbolic link to /usr)
- Chaper 5: Fixed the commands when a patch is used and the patch filename contained the .gz suffix.
- Chapter 5: Added −−disable−nls to every configure command in the "Perparing the LFS system..." section which didn't have it yet.
- Chapter 5: Added the installation of bash−2.03 so you have a shell that can be used to compile packages that violate POSIX standards regarding valid characters in variable names
- Chapter 5: Added the installation of console−tools and console−data for people who have non−US keyboards
- Chapter 5: Moved the ed program to the /bin directory conforming the FHS standard
- Chapter 6 & 7: Implemented LSB recommended run level scheme.
- Chapter 6 & 7: Implemented "fancy bootscripts". When something fails in a bootscript it still says FAILED but the text red. When something succeeded it still will print OK but the text is green.
- Chater 6: Added the loadkeys scripts for people with non−US keyboards
- Chapter 6: Added the /etc/sysconfig directory to "Creating directories"
- Chapter 6: Renamed the checkroot boot script into checkfs. The script also checks other file systems now.
- Chapter 6: Updated the mountfs boot script to mount all file systems that are mentioned in the /etc/fstab file and don't have the noauto option set.
- Chapter 6: After checkfs evaluated the existence of /fastboot or /forcecheck it will remove those files.
-

Chapter 6 & 7: Changed the mode of the boot scripts from 755 to 754

- Chapter 7: Moved system specific information for hostname and ethernet configuration to the /etc/sysconfig/network file
- Chapter 7: Removed the default gateway command
- Chapter 7: Fixed the typo in the ethnet script (NETMAKSK −> NETMASK)
- Chapter 7: A net−tools patch is available to fix a minor bug in the package (illegal variable names that bash−2.04 will complain about)

j.3.4 – June 5th, 2000

- Chapter 5: Fixed the kernel header files configuration
- Chapter 5: Fixed the lilo configuration

j.3.3 – May 15th, 2000

- Changed the default mount point from /mnt/xxx to /mnt/lfs (where xxx used to be the partition's designation like hda5, sda5 and others). The reason for the change is to make cross−platform instructions easier.
- Chapter 4: Changed the default modes for the $LFS/root and $LFS/tmp directory to respectively 0750 and 1777.
- Chapter 5: Removed the encoded password from the passwd file. Instead a file with no set password is created. The root password can be set by the user when the system is rebooted into the LFS system (after chapter 8).
- Chapter 5: Fixed the procps compile command for watch.c. It should compile properly now.
- Chapter 5: Fixed gzip patch installation (used the wrong filename in the patch command
- Chapter 5: Changed 'entering the chroot'ed environment' to make bash a login shell.
-

Chapter 5: Configuring the kernel has been moved to this chapter because it needs to be done before programs like e2fsprogs and lilo are compiled.

- Chapter 6: Fixed the rc script. It now checks to see if the previous run level starts a service before attempting to stop it in the new run level. Also, if a service is already started in the previous run level it won't attempt to start the service in the new run level again. Thanks to Jason Pearce for providing this fixed script.
- Chapter 7: Fixed the ethnet script – removed paratheses from the environment variables and removed the command to add a route. The ifconfig command used to bring the eth device up already sets this route.

j.3.2 – April 18th, 2000

- Chapter 4.7: Change only the owner of the $LFS/dev/* files
- Fixed a large amount of typo's that occured during the transistion from the LinuxDoc DTD (2.2 and lower) to the DocBook DTD (2.3.1 and higher).
- Moved chapters around quite a bit and applied a new structure in the book. Installations for Intel, Apple PowerPC and future systems will be put in their own dedicated part of the book.
- After the system is prepared to install the basic system software, we no longer reboot the system but instead we setup a chroot'ed environment. This will have the same effect without having to reboot.
- Apple PowerPC has it's own dedicated chapters now. This should increase readability a lot
- All optional chapters have been removed. LFS follows a "we provide the foundation, it's up to you to build the rest of the house" philosophy.
- Replaced the fixed packages by patch files. This way you can see what needs to be changed in a package in order to get it to compile properly.

j.3.1 – April 12th, 2000

- Chapter 4.4: Added the $LFS/usr/info symlink which points to $LFS/usr/share/info
- Chapter 7.3.1: Added a second variation to a 'swap–line' in a fstab file.
-

Chapter 7.3.2: Removed $LFS from the commands.

- Chapter 7.4.43: Added the vi symlink
- Chapter 9.2.5: Improved ethnet script to include routing information
- Chapter 10.1.2: Fixed missing subdirectory 'mqueue' in mkdir /var/spool –> /mkdir /var/spool/mqueue
- Chapter 10.1.4: Updated the sendmail configuration file with a few necessary options
- Chapter 10.1.7: Fixed wrong directory path /etc/init.d/rc2.d –> /etc/rc2.d

---

Mailinglists and archives

The linuxfromscratch.org server is hosting the following public accessible mailinglists:

- lfs−discuss
- lfs−config
- lfs−apps
- lfs−announce
- linux
- alfs−discuss

---

lfs−discuss

The lfs−discuss mailinglist discusses matters strictly related to the LFS−BOOK. If you have problems with the book, want to report a bug or two or have suggestions to improve the book, use this mailinglist.

Compilation problems, questions how to configure a piece of software and such are to be posted to the lfs−config or lfs−apps mailinglist. To find out what kind of questions go to which of the two lists you can read in the descriptions for those two lists.

---

lfs−config

The lfs−config list discusses problems with compiling, installing and configuring software that is used in the LFS−BOOK.

Problems with compiling, installing or configuring programs that didn't give problems on a non−LFS system are discussed on the lfs−apps list. If your problem doesn't fit on the lfs−config or lfs−apps mailinglist, please use the linux mailinglist.

---

lfs−apps

The lfs−apps list discussed the compilation and configuration of software that's not used in this book. The list is mainly used when you have problems installing software on an LFS system when you don't have problems compiling it on your normal distribution. It's not that LFS is incompatible with "normal" distributions but just the fact that you might be missing support−software that programs need or need to configure a few things on your new LFS system.

If you had problems with software on non−LFS systems as well, please use the linux mailinglist for help.

lfs−announce

The lfs−announce list is a moderated list. You can subscribe to it, but you can't post any messages to this list. This list is used to announce new stable releases. If you want to be informed about development releases as well then you'll have to join the lfs−discuss list. If you're already on the lfs−discuss list there's little use subscribing to this list as well because everything that is posted to the lfs−announce list will be posted to the lfs−discuss list as well.

linux

The linux list is a general Linux discussion list that handles everything that has got anything to do with Linux in any way, shape and form. Ocasionally we discuss the price of beer as well.

alfs−discuss

The alfs−discuss discusses the development of ALFS which stands for Automated LinuxFromScratch. The goal of this project is to develop an installation tool that can install an LFS system automatically for you. It's main goal is to speed up compilation by taking away your need to manually enter the commands to configure, compile and install packages.

How to subscribe?

You can subscribe to any of the above mentioned mailinglists by sending an email to majordomo@linuxfromscratch.org and write *subscribe listname* in the body of the message, where listname is replaced by either lfs−discuss, lfs−config, lfs−apps, lfs−announce, linux or alfs−discuss. No subject required.

You can, if you want, subscribe to multiple lists at the same time using one email. Just repeat the subscribe command for each of the lists you want to subscribe to.

After you have sent the email, the Majordomo program will send you an email back requesting a confirmation of your subscription request. After you have sent back this confirmation email, Majordomo will send you an email again with the message that you have been subscribed to the list(s) along with an introduction message for that particulair list.

How to unsubscribe?

To unsubscribe from a list, send an email to majordomo@linuxfromscratch.org and write *unsubscribe listname* in the body of the message, where listname is replaced by either lfs−discuss, lfs−config, lfs−apps, lfs−announce, linux or alfs−discuss.

You can, if you want, unsubscribe from multiple lists at the same time using one email. Just repeat the unsubscribe command for each of the lists you want to unsubscribe from.

Mail archives

The lfs−discuss, lfs−config, lfs−apps and linux mailing lists have an archive you can access to find information on subjects already posted to this list. You can find them at
http://www.pcrdallas.com/mail−archives

Contact information

Direct all your emails to the lfs−discuss mailinglist preferably.

If you need to reach Gerard Beekmans personally, send an email to gerard@linuxfromscratch.org

If you need to reach Michael Peters, Apple PPC maintainer of this book, personally, send an email to mpters@mac.com

Chapter 2. Important information

About $LFS

Please read the following carefully: throughout this document you will frequently see the variable name $LFS. $LFS must at all times be replaced by the directory where the partition that contains the LFS system is mounted. How to create and where to mount the partition will be explained later on in full detail in chapter 4. In my case the LFS partition is mounted on /mnt/lfs. If I read this document myself and I see $LFS somewhere, I will pretend that I read /mnt/lfs. If I read that I have to run this command: cp inittab $LFS/etc I actually will run this: cp inittab /mnt/lfs/etc

It's important that you do this no matter where you read it; be it in commands you enter on the prompt, or in some file you edit or create.

If you want, you can set the environment variable LFS. This way you can literally enter $LFS instead of replacing it by something like /mnt/lfs. This is accomplished by running: export LFS=/mnt/lfs

If I read cp inittab $LFS/etc, I literally can type cp inittab $LFS/etc and the shell will replace this command by cp inittab /mnt/lfs/etc automatically.

Do not forget to set the $LFS variable at all times. If you haven't set the variable and you use it in a command, $LFS will be ignored and whatever i left will be executed. The command cp inittab $LFS/etc without the LFS variable set, will result in copying the inittab file to the /etc directory which will overwrite your system's inittab. A file like inittab isn't that big a problem as it can easily be restored, but if you would make this mistake during the installation of the C Library, you can break your system badly and might have to reinstall it if you don't know how to repair it.

How to download the software

Throughout this document I will assume that you have stored all the packages you have downloaded somewhere in $LFS/usr/src.

I use the convention of having a $LFS/usr/src/sources directory. Under sources you'll find the directory 0−9 and the directories a through z. A package as sysvinit−2.78.tar.gz is stored under $LFS/usr/src/sources/s/ A package as bash−2.04.tar.gz is stored under $LFS/usr/src/sources/b/ and so forth. You don't have to follow this convention of course, I was just giving an example. It's better to keep the packages out of $LFS/usr/src and move them to a subdirectory, so we'll have a clean $LFS/usr/src directory in which we will unpack the packages and work with them.

The next chapter contains the list of all the packages you need to download, but the partition that is going to contain our LFS system isn't created yet. Therefore store the files temporarily somewhere where you want and remember to copy them to $LFS/usr/src/ when you have finished the chapter in which you prepare a new partition (which chapter exactly depends on your architecture).

How to install the software

Before you can actually start doing something with a package, you need to unpack it first. Often you will find the package files being tar'ed and gzip'ed (you can see this from a .tar.gz or .tgz extension). I'm not going to write down every time how to ungzip and how to untar an archive. I will tell you how to do that once, in this paragraph. There is also the possibility that you have the ability of downloading a .tar.bz2 file. Such a file is tar'ed and compressed with the bzip2 program. Bzip2 achieves a better compression than the commonly used gzip does. In order to use bz2 archives you need to have the bzip2 program installed. Most if not every distribution comes with this program so chances are high it is already installed on your system. If not, install it using your distribution's installation tool.

To start with, change to the $LFS/usr/src directory by running:

```
root:~# cd $LFS/usr/src
```

When you have a file that is tar'ed and gzip'ed, you unpack it by running either one of the following two commands, depending on the filename format:

```
root:/usr/src# tar xvfz filename.tar.gz
root:/usr/src# tar xvfz filename.tgz
```

When you have a file that is tar'ed and bzip'ed, you unpack it by running:

```
root:/usr/src#    bzcat filename.tar.bz2 | tar xv
```

Some tar programs (most of them nowadays but not all of them) are slightly modified to be able to use bzip2 files directly using either the I or the y tar parameter which works the same as the z tar parameter to handle gzip archives.

When you have a file that is tar'ed, you unpack it by running:

```
root:/usr/src# tar xvf filename.tar
```

When the archive is unpacked a new directory will be created under the current directory (and this document assumes that you unpack the archives under the $LFS/usr/src directory). You have to enter that new directory before you continue with the installation instructions. So everytime the book is going to install a program, it's up to you to unpack the source archive.

After you have installed a package you can do two things with it. You can either delete the directory that contains the sources or you can keep it. If you decide to keep it, that's fine by me. But if you need the same package again in a later chapter you need to delete the directory first before using it again. If you don't do this, you might end up in trouble because old settings will be used (settings that apply to your normal Linux system but which don't always apply to your LFS system). Doing a simple make clean does not always guarantee a totally clean source tree. The configure script can also have files lying around in various subdirectories which aren't always removed by a make clean process.

II. Part II – Installing LFS on Intel systems

Table of Contents

3. Packages you need to download
4. Preparing a new partition
5. Installing basic system software
6. Creating system boot scripts
7. Setting up basic networking
8. Making the LFS system bootable

Chapter 3. Packages you need to download

Below is a list of all the packages you need to download for building the basic system. The version numbers printed correspond to versions of the software that is known to work and which this book is based on. If you experience problems which you can't solve yourself, download the version that is assumed in this book (in case you download a newer version).

The listed file sizes refer to the sizes of the .tar.gz archives. Sometimes you can find .tar.bz2 archives, but as .tar.gz is still the most widely used format, that size is listed.

- Bash (2.04) − 1,668 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/bash/
- Binutils (2.10) 7,041 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/binutils/
- Bzip2 (1.0.1) 460 KB: http://sourceware.cygnus.com/bzip2/
- Diff Utils (2.7) 304 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/diffutils/
- File Utils (4.0) 1,143 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/fileutils/
- GCC (2.95.2) 12,583 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gcc/
- Linux Kernel (2.2.16) 16,705 KB: ftp://ftp.kernel.org/pub/linux/kernel/
- Glibc (2.1.3) 8,802 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/glibc/
- Glibc−crypt (2.1.3) 39 KB: ftp://ftp.gwdg.de/pub/linux/glibc/
- Glibc−linuxthreads (2.1.3) 149 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/glibc/
- Glibc Patch (2.1.3) − 1 KB: http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/download/glibc−2.1.3.patch.gz
- Grep (2.4.2) 449 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/grep/
- Gzip (1.2.4a) 215 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gzip/
-

Make (3.79.1) 1,006 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/make/

- Sed (3.02) 258 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/sed/
- Shell Utils (2.0) 1,214 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/sh−utils/
- Tar (1.13) 1.058,280 bytes: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/tar/
- Text Utils (2.0) 1,496 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/textutils/
- MAKEDEV (2.5) − 11 KB: ftp://ftp.ihg.uni−duisburg.de/Linux/system
- Bison (1.28) 410 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/bison/
- Mawk (1.3.3) : ftp://ftp.whidbey.net/pub/brennan/
- Patch (2.5.4) 182 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/patch/
- Find Utils (4.1) 287 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/findutils/
- Find Utils Patch (4.1) 1 KB: http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/download/findutils−4.1.patch.gz
- Ncurses (5.1) 1,671 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/ncurses/
- Less (358) 225 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/less/
- Groff (1.16) 1,393 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/groff/
- Man (1.5h1) 179,170 bytes: ftp://ftp.win.tue.nl/pub/linux−local/utils/man/
- Perl (5.6.0) 5,316 KB: http://www.perl.com
- M4 (1.4) 310 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/m4/
-

Texinfo (4.0) 1,106 kB ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/texinfo/

- Autoconf (2.13) 433 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/autoconf/
- Automake (1.4) 344 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/automake/
- Flex (2.5.4a) 372 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/non−gnu/flex/
- File (3.31) 135 KB: ftp://ftp.gw.com/mirrors/pub/unix/file/
- Libtool (1.3.5) 526 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/libtool/
- Bin86 (0.15.1) 138 KB: http://www.cix.co.uk/~mayday/
- Gettext (0.10.35) 696 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gettext/
- Console−tools (0.2.3) 652 KB: ftp://metalab.unc.edu/pub/Linux/system/keyboards/
- Console−tools (0.2.3) Patch: 4 KB: http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/download/console−tools−0.2.3.patch.gz
- Console−data (1999.08.29) 534 KB: ftp://metalab.unc.edu/pub/Linux/system/keyboards/
- E2fsprogs (1.19) 935 KB: http://e2fsprogs.sourceforge.net
- Ed (0.2) 181 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/ed/
- Ld.so (1.9.9) 346 KB: http://www.bcpub.com/ld.so−1.9.9.tar.gz
- Lilo (21.5) 215,560 bytes: ftp://brun.dyndns.org/pub/linux/lilo/
- Modutils (2.3.13) 197 KB: ftp://ftp.ocs.com.au/pub/modutils/
- Procinfo (17) 22 KB: ftp://ftp.cistron.nl/pub/people/svm/
-

Procps (2.0.7) 191 KB: ftp://people.redhat.com/johnsonm/procps/

- Psmisc (19) 21 KB: ftp://lrcftp.epfl.ch/pub/linux/local/psmisc/
- Shadow Password Suite (19990827) 706 KB: ftp://ftp.ists.pwr.wroc.pl/pub/linux/shadow/
- Vim−rt (5.7) 1,073 KB: ftp://ftp.vim.org/pub/editors/vim/unix/
- Vim−src (5.7) 1,202 KB: ftp://ftp.vim.org/pub/editors/vim/unix/
- Sysklogd (1.3.31) 93 KB: ftp://sunsite.unc.edu/pub/Linux/system/daemons/
- Sysvinit (2.78) 106 KB: ftp://ftp.cistron.nl/pub/people/miquels/sysvinit/
- Util Linux (2.10m) 1,178 KB: ftp://ftp.win.tue.nl/pub/linux/utils/util−linux/
- Man−pages (1.30) 667,665 bytes: ftp://ftp.win.tue.nl/pub/linux/docs/manpages/
- Netkit−base (0.17) 55 KB: ftp://ftp.uk.linux.org/pub/linux/Networking/netkit/
- Net−tools (1.57) 254 KB: http://www.bcpub.com/net−tools−1.57.tar.gz

---

Chapter 4. Preparing a new partition

Introduction

In this chapter the partition that is going to host the LFS system is going to be prepared. A new partition will be created, an ext2 file system will be created on it and the directory structure will be created. When this is done, we can move on to the next chapter and start building a new Linux system from scratch.

Creating a new partition

Before we can build our new Linux system, we need to have an empty Linux partition on which we can build our new system. I recommend a partition size of around 750 MB. This gives you enough space to store all the tarballs and to compile all packages without worrying running out of the necessary temporary disk space. If you already have a Linux Native partition available, you can skip this subsection.

Start the fdisk program (or some other fdisk program you prefer) with the appropriate hard disk as the option (like /dev/hda if you want to create a new partition on the primary master IDE disk). Create a Linux Native partition, write the partition table and exit the fdisk program. If you get the message that you need to reboot your system to ensure that that partition table is updated, then please reboot your system now before continuing. Remember what your new partition's designation is. It could be something like hda11 (as it is in my case). This newly created partition will be referred to as the LFS partition in this book.

Creating a ext2 file system on the new partition

Once the partition is created, we have to create a new ext2 file system on that partition. To create a new ext2 file system we use the mke2fs command. Enter the new partition as the only option and the file system will be created. If your partition is hda11, you would run:

```
root:~# mke2fs /dev/hda11
```

Mounting the new partition

Now that we have created the ext2 file system, it is ready for use. All we have to do to be able to access it (as in reading from and writing date to it) is mounting it. If you mount it under /mnt/lfs, you can access this partition by going to the /mnt/lfs directory and then do whatever you need to do. This document will assume that you have mounted the partition on a subdirectory under /mnt. It doesn't matter which directory you choose (or you can use just the /mnt directory as the mount point) but this book will assume /mnt/lfs in the commands it tells you to execute.

Create the /mnt/lfs directory by runnning:

```
root:~#   mkdir -p /mnt/lfs
```

Now mount the LFS partition by running:

```
root:~#   mount /dev/xxx /mnt/lfs
```

Replace "xxx" by your partition's designation.

This directory (/mnt/lfs) is the $LFS variable you have read about earlier. So if you read somewhere to "cp inittab $LFS/etc" you actually will type "cp inittab /mnt/lfs/etc".

Creating directories

Let's create the directory tree on the LFS partition according to the FHS standard which can be found at http://www.pathname.com/fhs/. Issuing the following commands will create the necessary directories:

```
root:~#   cd $LFS
root:~#   mkdir bin boot dev etc home lib mnt proc root sbin
tmp  var
root:~#   for dirname in $LFS/usr $LFS/usr/local
> do
> mkdir $dirname
> cd $dirname
> mkdir bin etc include lib sbin share  src tmp var
> ln -s share/man man
> ln -s share/doc doc
> ln -s share/info info
> cd $dirname/share
> mkdir dict doc info locale man nls misc  terminfo zoneinfo
> cd $dirname/share/man
> mkdir man1 man2 man3 man4 man5 man6 man7  man8
> done
root:~#   cd $LFS/var
root:var#   mkdir lock log run spool tmp
```

Normally directories are created with permission mode 755, which isn't desired for all directories. I haven't checked the FHS if they suggest default modes for certain directories, so I'll just change the modes for two directories. The first change is a mode 0750 for the $LFS/root directory. This is to make sure that not just everybody can enter the /root directory (the same you would do with /home/username directories). The second change is a mode 1777 for the $LFS/tmp directory. This way every user can write stuff to the /tmp directory if they need to. The sticky (1) bit makes sure users can't delete other user's file which they normally can do because the directory is set in such a way that every body (owner, group, world) can write to that directory.

```
root:~#   cd $LFS
root:lfs#   chmod 0750 root
root:lfs#   chmod 0555 proc
root:lfs#   chmod 1777 tmp usr/tmp var/tmp
```

Now that the directories are created, copy the source files you have downloaded in chapter 3 to some subdirectory under $LFS/usr/src (you will need to create this subdirectory yourself).

Chapter 5. Installing basic system software

How and why things are done

In this chapter we will install all the software that belongs to a basic Linux system. After you're done with this chapter you have a fully working Linux system. The remaining chapters deal with setting up networking, creating the boot scripts and adding an entry to lilo.conf so that you can boot your LFS system.

This chapter is devided in two chunks. The first part installs a few necessary programs on the LFS system. These programs are needed to install the rest of the programs that belong to a basic system. When the first part is done, we will enter a chroot'ed environment. This means that we start a shell with $LFS as the root directory (instead of the usual / directory as the root directory). This has the same effect as rebooting the computer into the LFS system, but this way we don't have to reboot. If something goes wrong, you don't need to reboot back in the normal Linux system to fix whatever you need to fix. You just open a new shell on a virtual console, or start a new xterm and you can do what you need to do.

The software in the first part will be linked statically. These programs will be re−installed in the second part and linked dynamically. The reason for the static version first is that there is a chance that our normal Linux system and your LFS system aren't using the same C Library versions. If the programs in the first part are linked against an older C library version, those program might not work well on the LFS system.

The key to learn what makes Linux tick is to know exactly what packages are used for and why you or the system needs them. In depth descriptions of the package are provided in Appendix A.

Debugging symbols and compiler optimizations

Most programs and libraries by default are compiled with debugging symbols and optimizing level 2 (gcc options −g and −O2) and are compiled for a specific CPU. On Intel platforms software is compiled for i386 processors by default. If you don't wish to run software on other machines other than your own, you might want to change the default compiler options so that they will be compiled with a higher optimization level, no debugging symbols and generate code for your specific architecture. Let me first explain what debugging symbols are.

A program compiled with debugging symbols means you can run a program or library through a debugger and the debugger's output will be user friendlier. These debugging symbols also enlarge the program or library significantly.

To remove debugging symbols from a binary (must be an a.out or ELF binary) run **`strip --strip-debug filename`** You can use wild cards if you need to strip debugging symbols from multiple files (use something like strip −−strip−debug $LFS/usr/bin/*). Another, easier, options is just not to compile programs with debugging symbols. Most people will probably never use a debugger on software, so by leaving those symbols out you can save a lot of diskspace.

Before you wonder if these debugging symbols would make a big difference, here are some statistics:

- A static Bash binary with debugging symbols: 2.3MB
- A static Bash binary without debugging symbols: 645KB
- A dynamic Bash binary with debugging symbols: 1.2MB
- A dynamic Bash binary without debugging symbols: 478KB
- $LFS/lib and $LFS/usr/lib (glibc and gcc files) with debugging symbols: 87MB
- $LFS/lib and $LFS/usr/lib (glibc and gcc files) without debugging symbols: 16MB

Sizes may vary depending on which compiler was used and which C library version was used to link dynamic programs against, but your results will be similar if you compare programs with and without debugging symbols. After I was done with this chapter and stripped all debugging symbols from all LFS binaries and libraries I regained a little over 102 MB of disk space. Quite the difference.

There are a few ways to change the default compiler options. One way is to edit every Makefile file you can find in a package, look for the CFLAGS and CXXFLAGS variables (a well designed package uses the CFLAGS variable to define gcc compiler options and CXXFLAGS to define g++ compiler options) and change their values. Packages like binutils, gcc, glibc and others have a lot of Makefile files in a lot of subdirectories so this would take a lot of time to do. Instead there's an easier way to do things: create the CFLAGS and CXXFLAGS environment variables. Most configure scripts read the CFLAGS and

CXXFLAGS variables and use them in the Makefile files. A few packages don't follow this convention and those package require manual editing.

The optimization options presented here are a minimal set of optimizations. This is to ensure that it will work on most platforms. Run the following command in the shell that you are going to use to compile the software in. If you exit the shell to, for example, pause compilation and continue later, make sure you execute the following commands again when you start compiling again (you only need to execute it once when you open a new virtual console, xterm, Eterm or some other terminal emulation program). Or you can insert these commands into your `/etc/profile`, `$HOME/.bashrc` or similar files. Run the following commands to setup the environment variables:

```
root:~#   export CFLAGS="-O3 -mcpu=xxx -march=yyy"
root:~#   export CXXFLAGS="-O3 -mcpu=xxx -march=yyy"
```

Replace xxx and yyy with the appropriate cpu idenfifiers such as i686. More information on what values these variables can have can be found in the GCC info page.

Please keep in mind that if you find that a package doesn't compile and gives errors like "segmentation fault, core dumped" it's most likely got to do with these compiler optimizations. Try lowering the optimizing level by changing −O3 to −O2. If that doesn't work try −O or leave it out all together. Also try changing the −mcpu and −march variables. Compilers are very sensitive to certain hardware too. Bad memory can cause compilation problems when a high level of optimization is used, like the −O3 setting. The fact that I don't have any problems compiling everything with −O3 doesn't mean you won't have any problems either. Another problem can be the Binutils version that's installed on your system which often causes compilation problems in Glibc (most noticable in RedHat because RedHat often uses beta software which aren't always very stable. "RedHat likes living on the bleeding edge, but leaves the bleeding up to you" (quoted from somebody on the lfs−discuss mailinglist).

Preparing the LFS system

We're about to start with installing the first set of packages. These packages will be, as previously explained, linked statically.

Before we start, make sure you have the CFLAGS and CXXFLAGS environment variables setup if you plan on using compiler optimizations. If you plan to use the LFS variable, make sure it's set too. You can check wether the variables are set and if they have the correct values by running:

```
root:~#   echo $LFS
root:~#   echo $CFLAGS
root:~#   echo $CXXFLAGS
```

Installing Bash

Installation of Bash

Install Bash by running the following commands:

```
root:bash-2.04#   ./configure --enable-static-link \
> --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:bash-2.04#   make
root:bash-2.04#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
root:bash-2.04#   mv $LFS/usr/bin/bash \
> $LFS/usr/bin/bashbug $LFS/bin
root:bash-2.04#   cd $LFS/bin
root:bin#   ln -s bash sh
```

Contents

The Bash package contains the bash program

Description

Bash is the Bourne−Again SHell, which is a widely used command interpreter on Unix systems. Bash is a program that reads from standard input, the keyboard. You type something and the program will evaluate what you have typed and do something with it, like running a program.

Installing Binutils

Installation of Binutils

Install Binutils by running the following commands:

```
root:binutils-2.10#   ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:binutils-2.10#   make -e LDFLAGS=-all-static tooldir=/usr
root:binutils-2.10#  make -e prefix=$LFS/usr \
> tooldir=$LFS/usr install
```

Description

The Binutils package contains the ld, as, ar, nm, objcopy, objdump, ranlib, size, strings, strip, c++filt, addr2line and nlmconv programs

---

Description

ld

ld combines a number of object and archive files, relocates their data and ties up symbol references. Often the last step in building a new compiled program to run is a call to ld.

---

as

as is primarily intended to assemble the output of the GNU C compiler gcc for use by the linker ld.

---

ar

The ar program creates, modifies, and extracts from archives. An archive is a single file holding a collection of other files in a structure that makes it possible to retrieve the original individual files (called members of the archive).

---

nm

nm lists the symbols from object files.

---

objcopy

objcopy utility copies the contents of an object file to another. objcopy uses the GNU BFD Library to read and write the object files. It can write the destination object file in a format different from that of the source object file.

---

objdump

objdump displays information about one or more object files. The options control what particular information to display. This information is mostly useful to programmers who are working on the compilation tools, as opposed to programmers who just want their program to compile and work.

---

ranlib

ranlib generates an index to the contents of an archive, and stores it in the archive. The index lists each symbol defined by a member of an archive that is a relocatable object file.

---

size

size lists the section sizes −−and the total size−− for each of the object files objfile in its argument list. By default, one line of output is generated for each object file or each module in an archive.

---

strings

For each file given, strings prints the printable character sequences that are at least 4 characters long (or the number specified with an option to the program) and are followed by an unprintable character. By default, it only prints the strings from the initialized and loaded sections of object files; for other types of files, it prints the strings from the whole file.

strings is mainly useful for determining the contents of non−text files.

---

strip

strip discards all or specific symbols from object files. The list of object files may include archives. At least one object file must be given. strip modifies the files named in its argument, rather than writing modified copies under different names.

---

c++filt

The C++ language provides function overloading, which means that you can write many functions with the same name (providing each takes parameters of different types). All C++ function names are encoded into a low−level assembly label (this process is known as mangling). The c++filt program does the inverse

mapping: it decodes (demangles) low−level names into user−level names so that the linker can keep these overloaded functions from clashing.

addr2line

addr2line translates program addresses into file names and line numbers. Given an address and an executable, it uses the debugging information in the executable to figure out which file name and line number are associated with a given address.

nlmconv

nlmconv converts relocatable object files into the NetWare Loadable Module files, optionally reading header files for NLM header information.

Installing Bzip2

Installation of Bzip2

Install Bzip2 by running the following commands:

```
root:bzip2-1.0.0#   sed \
> s/"\$(CC) \$(CFLAGS) -o"/"\$(CC) \$(CFLAGS)  \$(LDFLAGS)
-o"/ \
> Makefile | make -f /dev/stdin  LDFLAGS=-static
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   make PREFIX=$LFS/usr install
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   cd $LFS/usr/bin
root:bin#   mv bzcat bunzip2 bzip2 bzip2recover $LFS/bin
```

Contents

The Bzip2 packages contains the bzip2, bunzip2, bzcat and bzip2recover programs.

Description

Bzip2

bzip2 compresses files using the Burrows−Wheeler block sorting text compression algorithm, and Huffman coding. Compression is generally considerably better than that achieved by more conventional LZ77/LZ78−based compressors, and approaches the performance of the PPM family of statistical compressors.

Bunzip2

Bunzip2 decompresses files that are compressed with bzip2.

---

bzcat

bzcat (or bzip2 −dc) decompresses all specified files to the standard output.

---

bzip2recover

bzip2recover recovers data from damaged bzip2 files.

Installing Diffutils

Installation of Diffutils

Install Diffutils by running the following commands:

```
root:diffutils-2.7#
CPPFLAGS=-Dre_max_failures=re_max_failures2 \
> ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:diffutils-2.7#   make LDFLAGS=-static
root:diffutils-2.7#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
```

Contents

The Diffutils packagec contains the cmp, diff, diff3 and sdiff programs.

Description

cmp and diff

cmp and diff both compare two files and report their differences. Both programs have extra options which compare files in different situations.

---

diff3

The difference between diff and diff3 is that diff comprares 2 files, diff3 compares 3 files.

---

sdiff

sdiff merges two two files and interactively outputs the results.

Installing Fileutils

Installation of Fileutils

Install Fileutils by running the following commands:

```
root:fileutils-4.0#   ./configure --disable-nls --prefix=/usr
root:fileutils-4.0#   make LDFLAGS=-static
root:fileutils-4.0#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
root:fileutils-4.0#   cd $LFS/usr/bin
root:bin#   mv chgrp chmod chown cp dd df dir $LFS/bin
root:bin#   mv dircolors du install ln ls mkdir mkfifo
$LFS/bin
root:bin#   mv mknod mv rm rmdir sync touch vdir $LFS/bin
root:bin#   ln -s ../../bin/install install
```

Contents

The Fileutils package contains the chgrp, chmod, chown, cp, dd, df, dir, dircolors, du, install, ln, ls, mkdir, mkfifo, mknod, mv, rm, rmdir, sync, touch and vdir programs.

Description

chgrp

chgrp changes the group ownership of each given file to the named group, which can be either a group name or a numeric group ID.

chmod

chmod changes the permissions of each given file according to mode, which can be either a symbolic representation of changes to make, or an octal number representing the bit pattern for the new permissions.

chown

chown changes the user and/or group ownership of each given file.

cp

cp copies files from one place to another.

---

dd

dd copies a file (from the standard input to the standard output, by default) with a user−selectable blocksize, while optionally performing conversions on it.

---

df

df displays the amount of disk space available on the filesystem containing each file name argument. If no file name is given, the space available on all currently mounted filesystems is shown.

---

ls, dir and vdir

dir and vdir are versions of ls with different default output formats. These programs list each given file or directory name. Directory contents are sorted alphabetically. For ls, files are by default listed in columns, sorted vertically, if the standard output is a terminal; otherwise they are listed one per line. For dir, files are by default listed in columns, sorted vertically. For vdir, files are by default listed in long format.

---

dircolors

dircolors outputs commands to set the LS_COLOR environment variable. The LS_COLOR variable is use to change the default color scheme used by ls and related utilities.

---

du

du displays the amount of disk space used by each argument and for each subdirectory of directory arguments.

---

install

install copies files and sets their permission modes and, if possible, their owner and group.

---

ln

ln makes hard or soft (symbolic) links between files.

---

mkdir

mkdir creates directories with a given name.

mkfifo

mkfifo creates a FIFO with each given name.

mknod

mknod creates a FIFO, character special file, or block special file with the given file name.

mv

mv moves files from one directory to another or renames files, depending on the arguments given to mv.

rm

rm removes files or directories.

rmdir

rmdir removes directories, if they are empty.

sync

sync forces changed blocks to disk and updates the super block.

touch

touch changes the access and modification times of each given file to the current time. Files that do not exist are created empty.

Installing GCC on the normal system if necessary

Installation of GCC on the normal system if necessary

In order to compile Glibc−2.1.3 later on you need to have gcc−2.95.2 installed. Although any GCC version above 2.8 would do, 2.95.2 is the highly recommended version to use. egcs−2.91.x is also known to work. If you don't have gcc−2.95.x or egcs−2.91.x you need to install gcc−2.95.2 on your normal sytem before you can compile Glibc later in this chapter.

To find out which compiler version your systems has, run the following command:

```
root:~#   gcc --version
```

If you normal Linux system does not have gcc−2.95.x or egcs−2.91.x installed you need to install it now. We won't replace the current compiler on your system, but instead we will install gcc in a separate directory (/usr/local/gcc2952). This way no binaries or header files will be replaced.

After you unpacked the gcc−2.95.2 archive don't enter the newly created gcc−2.95.2 directory but stay in the $LFS/usr/src directory. Install GCC by running the following commands:

```
root:src#   mkdir $LFS/usr/src/gcc-build
root:src#   cd $LFS/usr/src/gcc-build
root:gcc-build#   ../gcc-2.95.2/configure \
> --prefix=/usr/local/gcc2952 \
> --with-local-prefix=/usr/local/gcc2952  \
> --with-gxx-include-dir=/usr/local/gcc2952/include/g++  \
> --enable-shared --enable-languages=c,c++
root:gcc-build#   make bootstrap
root:gcc-build#   make install
```

Contents

The GCC package contains compilers, preprocessors and the GNU C++ Library.

Description

Compiler

A compiler translates source code in text format to a format that a computer understands. After a source code file is compiled into an object file, a linker will create an executable file from one or more of these compiler generated object files.

Pre−processor

A pre−processor pre−processes a source file, such as including the contents of header files into the source file. You generally don't do this yourself to save yourself a lot of time. You just insert a line like #include <filename>. The pre−processor file insert the contents of that file into the source file. That's one of the things a pre−processor does.

C++ Library

The C++ library is used by C++ programs. The C++ library contains functions that are frequently used in C++ programs. This way the programmer doesn't have to write certain functions (such as writing a string of text to the screen) from scratch every time he creates a program.

Installing GCC on the LFS system

Installation of GCC on the LFS system

After you unpacked the gcc−2.95.2 archive don't enter the newly created gcc−2.95.2 directory but stay in the $LFS/usr/src directory. Install GCC by running the following commands:

```
root:src#   mkdir $LFS/usr/src/gcc-build
root:src#   cd $LFS/usr/src/gcc-build
root:gcc-build#   ../gcc-2.95.2/configure --prefix=/usr \
> --with-gxx-include-dir=/usr/include/g++ \
> --enable-languages=c,c++ --disable-nls
root:gcc-build#   make -e LDFLAGS=-static bootstrap
root:gcc-build#   make prefix=$LFS/usr
local_prefix=$LFS/usr/local \
> gxx_include_dir=$LFS/usr/include/g++ install
```

Creating necessary symlinks

The system needs a few symlinks to ensure every program is able to find the compiler and the pre−processor. Some programs run the cc program, others run the gcc program. Some programs expect the cpp program in /lib and others expect to find it in /usr/bin. Create those symlinks by running:

```
root:~#   cd $LFS/lib
root:lib#   ln -s ../usr/lib/gcc-lib/<host>/2.95.2/cpp cpp
root:lib#   cd $LFS/usr/lib
root:lib#   ln -s gcc-lib/<host>/2.95.2/cpp cpp
root:lib#   cd $LFS/usr/bin
root:bin#   ln -s gcc cc
```

Replace <host> with the directory where the gcc−2.95.2 files are installed (which is i686−unknown−linux in my case).

Contents

The GCC package contains compilers, preprocessors and the GNU C++ Library.

Description

Compiler

A compiler translates source code in text format to a format that a computer understands. After a source code file is compiled into an object file, a linker will create an executable file from one or more of these compiler generated object files.

Pre−processor

A pre−processor pre−processes a source file, such as including the contents of header files into the source file. You generally don't do this yourself to save yourself a lot of time. You just insert a line like #include <filename>. The pre−processor file insert the contents of that file into the source file. That's one of the things a pre−processor does.

C++ Library

The C++ library is used by C++ programs. The C++ library contains functions that are frequently used in C++ programs. This way the programmer doesn't have to write certain functions (such as writing a string of text to the screen) from scratch every time he creates a program.

Installing Linux Kernel

Installation of Linux Kernel

We won't be compiling a new kernel image yet. We'll do that after we have finished the installation of the basic system software in this chapter. But because certain software need the kernel header files, we're going to unpack the kernel archive now and set it up so that we can compile package that need the kernel.

Create the kernel configuration file by running the following command:

```
root:linux#   yes "" | make config
```

Ignore the warning *Broken pipe* you might see at the end. Now run the following commands to set up all the dependencies correctly:

```
root:linux#   make dep
```

Now that that's done, we need to create the `$LFS/usr/include/linux` and the `$LFS/usr/include/asm` symlinks. Create them by running the following commands:

```
root:~#   cd $LFS/usr/include
root:include#   ln -s ../src/linux/include/linux linux
root:include#   ln -s ../src/linux/include/asm asm
```

Contents

The Linux kernel package contains the Linux kernel.

Description

The Linux kernel is at the core of every Linux system. It's what makes Linux tick. When you turn on your computer and boot a Linux system, the very first piece of Linux software that gets loaded is the kernel. The kernel initializes the system's hardware components such as serial ports, parallel ports, sound cards, network cards, IDE controllers, SCSI controllers and a lot more. In a nutshell the kernel makes the hardware available so that the software can run.

Installing Glibc

A note on the glibc−crypt package

An excerpt from the README file that is distributed with the glibc−crypt package:

The add−on is not included in the main distribution of the GNU C library because some governments, most notably those of France, Russia, and the US, have very restrictive rules governing the distribution and use of encryption software. Please read the node "Legal Problems" in the manual for more details.

In particular, the US does not allow export of this software without a licence, including via the Internet. So please do not download it from the main FSF FTP site at ftp.gnu.org if you are outside the US. This software was completely developed outside the US.

"This software" refers to the glibc−crypt package at ftp://ftp.gwdg.de/pub/linux/glibc/. This law only affects people who don't live in the US. It's not prohibited to import DES software, so if you live in the US you can import the file safely from Germany without breaking cryptographic laws. This law is changing lately and I don't know what the status of it is at the moment. Better be safe than sory.

Installation of Glibc

Unpack the glibc−crypt and glibc−linuxthreads in the glibc−2.1.3 directory, not in /usr/src. Don't enter the created directories. Just unpack them and leave it with that.

A few default parameters of Glibc need to be changed, such as the directory where the shared libraries are supposed to be installed in and the directory that contains the system configuration files. For this purpose you need to create the `$LFS/usr/src/glibc-build` directory and cd into that directory with:

```
root:src#   mkdir $LFS/usr/src/glibc-build
root:src#   cd $LFS/usr/src/glibc-build
```

In that directory you create a new file `configparms` containing the following:

```
# Begin configparms

slibdir=/lib
sysconfdir=/etc

# End configparms
```

If your system had already a suitable GCC version installed, change to the `$LFS/usr/src/glibc-build` directory and install Glibc by running the following commands:

```
root:glibc-build#   ../glibc-2.1.3/configure \
> --prefix=/usr --enable-add-ons \
> --with-headers=$LFS/usr/include
root:glibc-build#   make
root:glibc-build#   make install_root=$LFS install
```

If you're getting errors related to illegal character 45 in some variable name during the compilation, apply the Glibc patch to the glibc−2.1.3 directory by running the following command:

```
root:glibc-2.1.3#   patch -Np1 -i ../glibc-2.1.3.patch
```

If your system didn't have a suitable GCC version installed, change to the `$LFS/usr/src/glibc-build` directory and install Glibc using the gcc−2.95.2 you just installed by running the following commands:

```
root:glibc-build#   CC=/usr/local/gcc2952/bin/gcc \
> ../glibc-2.1.3/configure --prefix=/usr  --enable-add-ons \
> --with-headers=$LFS/usr/include
root:glibc-build#   make
root:glibc-build#   make install_root=$LFS install
```

If you're getting errors related to illegal character 45 in some variable name during the compilation, apply the Glibc patch to the glibc−2.1.3 directory by running the following command:

```
root:glibc-2.1.3#    patch -Np1 -i ../glibc-2.1.3.patch
```

Copying old NSS library files

If your normal Linux system runs glibc−2.0, you need to copy the NSS library files to the LFS partition. Certain statically linked programs still depend on the NSS library, especially programs that need to lookup usernames,userid's and groupid's. You can check which C library version your normal Linux system uses by running:

```
root:~# ls /lib/libc*
```

Your system uses glib−2.0 if there is a file that looks like *libc−2.0.7.so*

Your system uses glibc−2.1 if there is a file that looks like *libc−2.1.3.so*

Of course, the micro version number can be different (you could have libc−2.1.2 or libc−2.1.1 for example).

If you have a libc−2.0.x file copy the NSS library files by running:

```
root:~# cp −av /lib/libnss*  $LFS/lib
```

There are a few distributions that don't have files from which you can see which version of the C Library it is. If that's the case, it will be hard to determine which C library version you exactly have. Try to obtain this information using your distribution's installation tool. It often says which version it has available. If you can't figure out at all which C Library version is used, then copy the NSS files anyway and hope for the best. That's the best advise I can give I'm afraid.

Contents

The Glibc package contains the GNU C Library.

Description

The C Library is a collection of commonly used functions in programs. This way a programmer doens't need to create his own functions for every single task. The most common things like writing a string to your screen are already present and at the disposal of the programmer.

The C library (actually almost every library) come in two flavours: dynamic ones and static ones. In short when a program uses a static C library, the code from the C library will be copied into the executable file. When a program uses a dynamic library, that executable will not contain the code from the C library, but instead a routine that loads the functions from the library at the time the program is run. This means a significant decrease in the file size of a program. If you don't understand this concept, you better read the documentation that comes with the C Library as it is too complicated to explain here in one or two lines.

Installing Grep

Installation of Grep

Install Grep by running the following commands:

```
root:grep-2.4.2#
CPPFLAGS=-Dre_max_failures=re_max_failures2 \
> ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:grep-2.4.2#   make LDFLAGS=-static
root:grep-2.4.2#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
```

Contents

The grep package contains the egrep, fgrep and grep programs.

Description

egrep

egrep prints lines from files matching an extended regular expression pattern.

fgrep

fgrep prints lines from files matching a list of fixed strings, separated by newlines, any of which is to be matched.

grep

grep prints lines from files matching a basic regular expression pattern.

Installing Gzip

Installation of Gzip

Install Gzip by running the following commands:

```
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   make LDFLAGS=-static
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   cp $LFS/usr/bin/gunzip $LFS/usr/bin/gzip
$LFS/bin
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   rm $LFS/usr/bin/gunzip $LFS/usr/bin/gzip
```

This package is known to cause compilation problems on certain platforms. If you're having trouble compiling this package as well, you can download a patch from http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/download/gzip–1.2.4a.patch.gz

Install this patch by running the following command:

```
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   patch -Np1 -i ../gzip-1.2.4a.patch
```

Now recompile the package using the same commands as above.

Contents

The Gzip package contains the gunzip, gzexe, gzip, zcat, zcmp, zdiff, zforece, zgrep, zmore and znew programs.

Description

gunzip

gunzip decompresses files that are compressed with gzip.

gzexe

gzexe allows you to compress executables in place and have them automatically uncompress and execute when you run them (at a penalty in performance).

---

gzip

gzip reduces the size of the named files using Lempel–Ziv coding (LZ77).

---

zcat

zcat uncompresses either a list of files on the command line or its standard input and writes the uncompressed data on standard output

---

zcmp

zcmp invokes the cmp program on compressed files.

---

zdiff

zdiff invokes the diff program on compressed files.

---

zforce

zforce forces a .gz extension on all gzip files so that gzip will not compress them twice. This can be useful for files with names truncated after a file transfer.

---

zgrep

zgrep invokes the grep program on compressed files.

---

zmore

Zmore is a filter which allows examination of compressed or plain text files one screenful at a time on a soft–copy terminal (similar to the more program).

---

znew

Znew recompresses files from .Z (compress) format to .gz (gzip) format.

Installing Make

Installation of Make

Install Make by running the following commands:

```
root:make-3.79.1#   ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:make-3.79.1#   make LDFLAGS=-static
root:make-3.79.1#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
```

Contents

The Make package contains the make program.

Description

make determine automatically which pieces of a large program need to be recompiled, and issue the commands to recompile them.

Installing Sed

Installation of Sed

Install Sed by running the following commands:

```
root:sed-3.02#   CPPFLAGS=-Dre_max_failures=re_max_failures2 \
> ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:sed-3.02#   make LDFLAGS=-static
root:sed-3.02#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
root:sed-3.02#   mv $LFS/usr/bin/sed $LFS/bin
```

Contents

The Sed package contains the sed program.

Description

sed is a stream editor. A stream editor is used to perform basic text transformations on an input stream (a file or input from a pipeline).

Installing Shellutils

Installation of Shellutils

Install Shellutils by running the following commands:

```
root:sh-utils-2.0#   ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:sh-utils-2.0#   make LDFLAGS=-static
root:sh-utils-2.0#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
root:sh-utils-2.0#   cd $LFS/usr/bin
root:bin#   mv date echo false pwd stty $LFS/bin
root:bin#   mv su true uname hostname $LFS/bin
```

Contents

The Shellutils package contains the basename, chroot, date, dirname, echo, env, expr, factor, false, groups, hostid, hostname, id, logname, nice, nohup, pathchk, pinky, printenv, printf, pwd, seq, sleep, stty, su, tee, test, true, tty, uname, uptime, users, who, whoami and yes programs.

Description

basename

basename strips directory and suffixes from filenames.

---

chroot

chroot runs a command or interactive shell with special root directory.

---

date

date displays the current time in a specified format, or sets the system date.

---

dirname

dirname strips non–directory suffixes from file name.

---

echo

echo displays a line of text.

---

env

env runs a program in a modified environment.

---

expr

expr evaluates expressions.

---

factor

factor prints the prime factors of all specified integer numbers.

---

false

false always exits with a status code indicating failure.

---

groups

groups prints the groups a user is in.

---

hostid

hostid prints the numeric identifier (in hexadecimal) for the current host.

---

hostname

hostname sets or prints the name of the current host system

---

id

id prints the real and effective UIDs and GIDs of a user or the current user.

---

logname

logname prints the current user's login name.

---

nice

nice runs a program with modified scheduling priority.

---

nohup

nohup runs a command immune to hangups, with output to a non−tty

---

pathchk

pathchk checks whether file names are valid or portable.

---

pinky

pinky is a lightweight finger utility which retrieves information about a certain user

---

printenv

printenv prints all or part of the environment.

---

printf

printf formats and print data (the same as the printf C function).

---

pwd

pwd prints the name of the current/working directory

---

seq

seq prints numbers in a certain range with a certain increment.

---

sleep

sleep delays for a specified amount of time.

---

stty

stty changes and prints terminal line settings.

---

su

su runs a shell with substitute user and group IDs

---

tee

tee reads from standard input and write to standard output and files.

---

test

test checks file types and compares values.

---

true

True always exitx with a status code indicating success.

---

tty

tty prints the file name of the terminal connected to standard input.

---

uname

uname prints system information.

---

uptime

uptime tells how long the system has been running.

---

users

users prints the user names of users currently logged in to the current host.

who

who shows who is logged on.

whoami

whoami prints your effective userid.

yes

yes outputs a string repeatedly until killed.

Installing Tar

Installation of Tar

Install Tar by running the following commands:

```
root:tar-1.13#   ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:tar-1.13#   make LDFLAGS=-static
root:tar-1.13#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
root:tar-1.13#   mv $LFS/usr/bin/tar $LFS/bin
```

Contents

The tar package contains the tar and rmt programs.

Description

tar

tar is an archiving program designed to store and extract files from an archive file known as a tarfile.

rmt

rmt is a program used by the remote dump and restore programs in manipulating a magnetic tape drive through an interprocess communication connection.

Installing Textutils

Installation of Textutils

Install Textutils by running the following commands:

```
root:textutils-2.0#   ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:textutils-2.0#   make LDFLAGS=-static
root:textutils-2.0#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
root:textutils-2.0#   mv $LFS/usr/bin/cat $LFS/bin
```

Contents

The Textutils package contains the cat, cksum, comm, split, cut, expand, fmt, fold, head, join, md5sum, nl, od, paste, pr, ptx, sort, split, sum, tac, tail, tr, tsort, unexpand, uniq and wc programs.

Description

cat

cat concatenates file(s) or standard input to standard output.

---

cksum

cksum prints CRC checksum and byte counts of each specified file.

---

comm

comm compares two sorted files line by line.

---

csplit

cplit outputs pieces of a file separated by (a) pattern(s) to files xx01, xx02, ..., and outputs byte counts of each piece to standard output.

---

cut

cut prints selected parts of lines from specified files to standard output.

expand

expand converts tabs in files to spaces, writing to standard output.

fmt

fmt reformats each paragraph in the specified file(s), writing to standard output.

fold

fold wraps input lines in each specified file (standard input by default), writing to standard output.

head

Print first xx (10 by default) lines of each specified file to standard output.

join

join joins lines of two files on a common field.

md5sum

md5sum prints or checks MD5 checksums.

nl

nl writes each specified file to standard output, with line numbers added.

od

od writes an unambiguous representation, octal bytes by default, of a specified file to standard output.

paste

paste writes lines consisting of the sequentially corresponding lines from each specified file, separated by TABs, to standard output.

---

pr

pr paginates or columnates files for printing.

---

ptx

ptx produces a permuted index of file contents.

---

sort

sort writes sorted concatenation of files to standard output.

---

split

split outputs fixed–size pieces of an input file to PREFIXaa, PREFIXab, ...

---

sum

sum prints checksum and block counts for each specified file.

---

tac

tac writes each specified file to standard output, last line first.

---

tail

tail print the last xx (10 by default) lines of each specified file to standard output.

---

tr

tr translates, squeezes, and/or deletes characters from standard input, writing to standard output.

---

tsort

tsort writes totally ordered lists consistent with the partial ordering in specified files.

---

unexpand

unexpand converts spaces in each file to tabs, writing to standard output.

---

uniq

uniq discards all but one of successive identical lines from files or standard input and writes to files or standard output.

---

wc

wc prints line, word, and byte counts for each specified file, and a total line if more than one file is specified.

Creating passwd and group files

In order for user and group root to be recognized and to be able to logon it needs an entry in the /etc/passwd and /etc/group file. Besides the group root a couple of other groups are recommended and needed by packages. The groups with their GID's below aren't part of any standard. The LSB only recommends besides a group root a group bin to be present with GID 1. Other group names and GID's can be chosen by yourself. Well written packages don't depend on GID numbers but just use the group name, it doesn't matter all that much what GID a group has. Since there aren't any standards for groups I won't follow any conventions used by Debian, RedHat and others. The groups added here are the groups the MAKEDEV script (the script that creates the device files in the /dev directory) mentions.

Create a new file `$LFS/etc/passwd` by running the following command:

```
root:~#   echo "root:x:0:0:root:/root:/bin/bash" >
$LFS/etc/passwd
```

Create a new file `$LFS/etc/group` by running the following command:

```
root:~#   echo "root:x:0:" > $LFS/etc/group
root:~#   echo "bin:x:1:" >> $LFS/etc/group
root:~#   echo "sys:x:2:" >> $LFS/etc/group
root:~#   echo "kmem:x:3:" >> $LFS/etc/group
root:~#   echo "tty:x:4:" >> $LFS/etc/group
root:~#   echo "uucp:x:5:" >> $LFS/etc/group
root:~#   echo "daemon:x:6:" >> $LFS/etc/group
root:~#   echo "floppy:x:7:" >> $LFS/etc/group
root:~#   echo "disk:x:8:" >> $LFS/etc/group
```

Copying /proc/devices

In order for the MAKEDEV script properly create device entries in /dev it needs access to /proc/devices. We can't mount the proc file system on our LFS system yet so instead we just copy the /proc/devices file to $LFS/proc. This means the $LFS/proc/devices file won't be updated when the kernel updates /proc/devices but I don't see any harm in doing it, since it's only needed during the execution of the MAKEDEV script. Just make sure you don't add or remove any hardware during the next 3 minutes by loading or unloading a kernel module or rebooting your computer before continuing with this book.

Copy the /proc/devices file by running the following command:

```
root:~#   cp /proc/devices $LFS/proc
```

Installing basic system software

The installation of all the software is pretty straightforward and you'll think it's so much easier and shorter to give the generic installation instructions for each package and only explain how to install something if a certain package requires an alternate installation method. Although I agree with you on that, I, however, choose to give the full instructions for each and every package. This is simply to avoid any possible confusion and errors.

Entering the chroot'ed environment

It's time to enter our chroot'ed environment in order to install the rest of the software we need.

Enter the following command to enter the chroot'ed environment. From this point on there's no need to use the $LFS variable anymore, because everything you do will be restricted to the LFS partition (since / is actually /mnt/lfs but the shell doesn't know that).

```
root:~# chroot $LFS bash --login
```

Now that we are inside a chroot'ed environment, we can continue to install all the basic system software. Make sure you execute all the following commands in this chapter from within the chroot'ed environment.

Creating device files

Installation of MAKEDEV

Install MAKEDEV by running the following commands:

```
root:MAKEDEV-2.5#   sed "s/# 9/9/" MAKEDEV >/dev/MAKEDEV
root:MAKEDEV-2.5#   chmod 754 /dev/MAKEDEV
```

Creating the /dev entries

Create the device files by running the following commands:

```
root:~#    cd /dev
root:dev#    ./MAKEDEV -v generic
```

Now that the device file entries are created the /proc/devices file can be removed by running the following command:

```
root:~#   rm /proc/devices
```

Please note that this script dates back from 1997 and therefore can be outdated and not support newer hardware. If you need device files which aren't known by this script please read the Documentation/devices.txt file in a Linux source tree. This file lists all the major and minor numbers for all the device files that the kernel knows about. With this list you can create such device files yourself. See the mknod man page for more information on how to make device files yourself.

Installing GCC

Installation of GCC

After you unpacked the gcc−2.95.2 archive don't enter the newly created gcc−2.95.2 directory but stay in the /usr/src directory. Install GCC by running the following commands:

```
root:src#   mkdir /usr/src/gcc-build
root:src#   cd /usr/src/gcc-build
root:gcc-build#   ../gcc-2.95.2/configure --prefix=/usr \
> --with-gxx-include-dir=/usr/include/g++ \
> --enable-shared --enable-languages=c,c++
root:gcc-build#   make bootstrap
root:gcc-build#   make install
```

Contents

The GCC package contains compilers, preprocessors and the GNU C++ Library.

Description

Compiler

A compiler translates source code in text format to a format that a computer understands. After a source code file is compiled into an object file, a linker will create an executable file from one or more of these compiler generated object files.

Pre−processor

A pre−processor pre−processes a source file, such as including the contents of header files into the source file. You generally don't do this yourself to save yourself a lot of time. You just insert a line like #include <filename>. The pre−processor file insert the contents of that file into the source file. That's one of the things a pre−processor does.

C++ Library

The C++ library is used by C++ programs. The C++ library contains functions that are frequently used in C++ programs. This way the programmer doesn't have to write certain functions (such as writing a string of text to the screen) from scratch every time he creates a program.

Installing Bison

Installation of Bison

Install Bison by running the following commands:

```
root:bison-1.28#   ./configure --prefix=/usr \
> --datadir=/usr/share/bison
root:bison-1.28#   make
root:bison-1.28#   make install
```

Contents

The Bison package contains the bison program.

Description

Bison is a parser generator, a replacement for YACC. YACC stands for Yet Another Compiler Compiler. What is Bison then? It is a program that generates a program that analyses the structure of a textfile. Instead of writing the actual program you specify how things should be connected and with those rules a program is constructed that analyses the textfile.

There are alot of examples where structure is needed and one of them is the calculator.

Given the string :

```
1 + 2 * 3
```

You can easily come to the result 7. Why ? Because of the structure. You know how to interpretet the string. The computer doesn't know that and Bison is a tool to help it understand by presenting the string in the following way to the compiler:

```
   +
  / \
  *   1
 / \
2   3
```

You start at the bottom of a tree and you come across the numbers 2 and 3 which are joined by the multiplication symbol, so the computers multiplies 2 and 3. The result of that multiplication is remembered and the next thing that the computer sees is the result of 2*3 and the number 1 which are joined by the add symbol. Adding 1 to the previous result makes 7. In calculating the most complex calculations can be broken down in this tree format and the computer just starts at the bottom and works it's way up to the top and comes with the correct answer. Of course, Bison isn't only used for calculators alone.

Installing Mawk

Installation of Mawk

Install Mawk by running the following commands:

```
root:mawk-1.3.3#   ./configure
root:mawk-1.3.3#   make
root:mawk-1.3.3#   make BINDIR=/usr/bin \
> MANDIR=/usr/share/man/man1 install
root:mawk-1.3.3#   cd /usr/bin
root:bin#   ln -s mawk awk
```

Contents

The Mawk package contains the mawk program.

Description

gawk

Mawk is an interpreter for the AWK Programming Language. The AWK language is useful for manipulation of data files, text retrieval and processing, and for prototyping and experimenting with algorithms.

Installing Patch

Installation of Patch

Install Patch by running the following commands:

```
root:patch-2.5.4#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:patch-2.5.4#   make
root:patch-2.5.4#   make install
```

Contents

The Patch package contains the patch program.

Description

The patch program modifies a file according to a patch file. A patch file usually is a list created by the diff program that contains instructions on how an original file needs to be modified. Patch is used a lot for source code patches since it saves time and space. Imagine you have a package that is 1MB in size. The next version of that package only has changes in two files of the first version. You can ship an entirely new package of 1MB or provide a patch file of 1KB which will update the first version to make it identical to the second version. So if you have downloaded the first version already, a patch file can save you a second large download.

Installing Findutils

Installing Findutils

Install Findutils by running the following commands:

```
root:findutils-4.1#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:findutils-4.1#   make
root:findutils-4.1#   make install
```

This package is known to cause compilation problem. If you're having trouble compiling this package as well, apply the Findutils patch.

Install this patch by running the following command:

```
root:findutils-4.1#   patch -Np1 -i ../findutils-4.1.patch
```

Now recompile the package using the same commands as above.

Contents

The Findutils package contains the find, locate, updatedb and xargs programs.

Description

Find

The find program searches for files in a directory hierarchy which match a certain criteria. If no criteria is given, it lists all files in the current directory and it's subdirectories.

Locate

Locate scans a database which contain all files and directories on a filesystem. This program lists the files and directories in this database matching a certain criteria. If you're looking for a file this program will scan the database and tell you exactly where the files you requested are located. This only makes sense if your locate database is fairly up−to−date else it will provide you with out−of−date information.

Updatedb

The updatedb program updates the locate database. It scans the entire file system (including other file system that are currently mounted unless you specify it not to) and puts every directory and file it finds into the database that's used by the locate program which retrieves this information. It's a good practice to update this database once a day so that you are ensured of a database that is up–to–date.

Xargs

The xargs command applies a command to a list of files. If you need to perform the same command on multiple files, you can create a file that contains all these files (one per line) and use xargs to perform that command on the list.

Installing Ncurses

Installation of Ncurses

Install Ncurses by running the following commands:

```
root:ncurses-5.1#   ./configure --prefix=/usr --libdir=/lib \
> --with-shared --disable-termcap
root:ncurses-5.1#   make
root:ncurses-5.1#   make install
```

Contents

The Ncurses package contains the ncurses, panel, menu and form libraries. It also contains the tic, infocmp, clear, tput, toe and tset programs.

Description

The libraries

The libraries that make up the Ncurses library are used to display text (often in a fancy way) on your screen. An example where ncurses is used is in the kernel's "make menuconfig" process. The libraries contain routines to create panels, menu's, form and general text display routines.

Tic

Tic is the terminfo entry–description compiler. The program translates a terminfo file from source format into the binary format for use with the ncurses library routines. Terminfo files contain information about the capabilities of your terminal.

Infocmp

The infocmp program can be used to compare a binary terminfo entry with other terminfo entries, rewrite a terminfo description to take advantage of the use= terminfo field, or print out a terminfo description from the binary file (term) in a variety of formats (the opposite of what tic does).

---

clear

The clear program clears your screen if this is possible. It looks in the environment for the terminal type and then in the terminfo database to figure out how to clear the screen.

---

tput

The tput program uses the terminfo database to make the values of terminal−dependent capabilities and information available to the shell, to initialize or reset the terminal, or return the long name of the requested terminal type.

---

toe

The toe program lists all available terminal types by primary name with descriptions.

---

tset

The Tset program initializes terminals so they can be used, but it's not widely used anymore. It's provided for 4.4BSD compatibility.

Installing Less

Installation of Less

Install Less by running the following commands:

```
root:less-358#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:less-358#   make
root:less-358#   make install
root:less-358#   mv /usr/bin/less /bin
```

Contents

The Less package contains the less program

Description

The less program is a file pager (or text viewer). It displays the contents of a file with the ability to scroll. Less is an improvement on the common pager called "more". Less has the ability to scroll backwards through files as well and it doesn't need to read the entire file when it starts, which makes it faster when you are reading large files.

Installing Groff

Installation of Groff

Install Groff by running the following commands:

```
root:groff-1.16#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:groff-1.16#   make
root:groff-1.16#   make install
```

Contents

The Groff packages contains the addftinfo, afmtodit, eqn, grodvi, groff, grog, grohtml, grolj4, grops, grotty, hpftodit, indxbib, lkbib, lookbib, neqn, nroff, pfbtops, pic, psbb, refer, soelim, tbl, tfmtodit and troff programs.

Description

addftinfo

addftinfo reads a troff font file and adds some additional font–metric information that is used by the groff system.

afmtodit

afmtodit creates a font file for use with groff and grops.

eqn

eqn compiles descriptions of equations embedded within troff input files into commands that are understood by troff.

grodvi

grodvi is a driver for groff that produces TeX dvi format.

groff

groff is a front–end to the groff document formatting system. Normally it runs the troff program and a postprocessor appropriate for the selected device.

---

grog

grog reads files and guesses which of the groff options –e, –man, –me, –mm, –ms, –p, –s, and –t are required for printing files, and prints the groff command including those options on the standard output.

---

grohtml

grohtml translates the output of GNU troff to html

---

grolj4

grolj4 is a driver for groff that produces output in PCL5 format suitable for an HP Laserjet 4 printer.

---

grops

grops translates the output of GNU troff to PostScript.

---

grotty

grotty translates the output of GNU troff into a form suitable for typewriter–like devices.

---

hpftodit

hpftodit creates a font file for use with groff –Tlj4 from an HP tagged font metric file.

---

indxbib

indxbib makes an inverted index for the bibliographic databases a specified file for use with refer, lookbib, and lkbib.

---

lkbib

lkbib searches bibliographic databases for references that contain specified keys and prints any references found on the standard output.

lookbib

lookbib prints a prompt on the standard error (unless the standard input is not a terminal), reads from the standard input a line containing a set of keywords, searches the bibliographic databases in a specified file for references containing those keywords, prints any references found on the standard output, and repeats this process until the end of input.

neqn

It is currently not known what neqn is and what it does.

nroff

The nroff script emulates the nroff command using groff.

pfbtops

pfbtops translates a PostScript font in .pfb format to ASCII.

pic

pic compiles descriptions of pictures embedded within troff or TeX input files into commands that are understood by TeX or troff.

psbb

psbb reads a file which should be a PostScript document conforming to the Document Structuring conventions and looks for a %%BoundingBox comment.

refer

refer copies the contents of a file to the standard output, except that lines between .[and .] are interpreted as citations, and lines between .R1 and .R2 are interpreted as commands about how citations are to be processed.

soelim

soelim reads files and replaces lines of the form *.so file* by the contents of *file*.

tbl

tbl compiles descriptions of tables embedded within troff input files into commands that are understood by troff.

---

tfmtodit

tfmtodit creates a font file for use with **`groff -Tdvi`**

---

troff

troff is highly compatible with Unix troff. Usually it should be invoked using the groff command, which will also run preprocessors and postprocessors in the appropriate order and with the appropriate options.

Installing Man

Installation of Man

Install Man by running the following commands:

```
root:man-1.5h1#   ./configure -default
root:man-1.5h1#   make
root:man-1.5h1#   make install
```

Contents

The Man package contains the man, apropos whatis and makewhatis programs.

Description

man

man formats and displays the on−line manual pages.

---

apropos

apropos searches a set of database files containing short descriptions of system commands for keywords and displays the result on the standard output.

---

whatis

whatis searches a set of database files containing short descriptions of system commands for keywords and displays the result on the standard output. Only complete word matches are displayed.

---

makewhatis

makewhatis reads all the manual pages contained in given sections of manpath or the preformatted pages contained in the given sections of catpath. For each page, it writes a line in the whatis database; each line consists of the name of the page and a short description, separated by a dash. The description is extracted using the content of the NAME section of the manual page.

Installing Perl

Installation of Perl

Install Perl by running the following commands:

```
root:perl-5.6.0#   ./Configure -Dprefix=/usr
root:perl-5.6.0#   make
root:perl-5.6.0#   make test
root:perl-5.6.0#   make install
```

If you don't want to answer all those questions Perl asks you, you can add the -d option to the configure script and Perl will use all the default settings.

Also note that a few tests during the make test phase will fail for various reasons. One being there's not network support yet and a few packages haven't been installed yet. It's ok if not every test succeeds. If there are between 5 and 10 failed tests you're just fine. You might want to reinstall perl after you're done with chapter 7.

Contents

The Perl package contains Perl – Practical Extraction and Report Language

Description

Perl combines the features and capabilities of C, awk, sed and sh into one powerful programming language.

Installing M4

Installation of M4

Install M4 by running the following commands:

```
root:m4-1.4#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:m4-1.4#   make
root:m4-1.4#   make install
```

Contents

The M4 package contains the M4 processor

Description

M4 is a macro processor. It copies input to output expanding macros as it goes. Macros are either builtin or user–defined and can take any number of arguments. Besides just doing macro expansion m4 has builtin functions for including named files, running UNIX commands, doing integer arithmetic, manipulating text in various ways, recursion, etc. M4 can be used either as a front–end to a compiler or as a macro processor in its own right.

Installing Texinfo

Installation of Texinfo

Install Texinfo by running the following commands:

```
root:texinfo-4.0#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:texinfo-4.0#   make
root:texinfo-4.0#   make install
```

Contents

The Texinfo package contains the info, install–info, makeinfo, texi2dvi and texindex programs

Description

info

The info program reads Info documents, usually contained in your /usr/doc/info directory. Info documents are like man(ual) pages, but they tend to be more in depth than just explaining the options to a program.

install–info

The install–info program updates the info entries. When you run the info program a list with available topics (ie: available info documents) will be presented. The install–info program is used to maintain this list of available topics. If you decice to remove info files manually, you need to delete the topic in the index file as well. This program is used for that. It also works the other way around when you add info documents.

makeinfo

The makeinfo program translates Texinfo source documents into various formats. Available formats are: info files, plain text and HTML.

texi2dvi

The texi2dvi program prints Texinfo documents

texindex

The texindex program is used to sort Texinfo index files.

Installing Autoconf

Installation of Autoconf

Install Autoconf by running the following commands:

```
root:autoconf-2.13#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:autoconf-2.13#   make
root:autoconf-2.13#   make install
```

Contents

The Autoconf package contains the autoconf, autoheader, autoreconf, autoscan, autoupdate and ifnames programs

---

Description

autoconf

Autoconf is a tool for producing shell scripts that automatically configure software source code packages to adapt to many kinds of UNIX–like systems. The configuration scripts produced by Autoconf are independent of Autoconf when they are run, so their users do not need to have Autoconf.

---

autoheader

The autoheader program can create a template file of C #define statements for configure to use

---

autoreconf

If you have a lot of Autoconf–generated configure scripts, the autoreconf program can save you some work. It runs autoconf (and autoheader, where appropriate) repeatedly to remake the Autoconf configure scripts and configuration header templates in the directory tree rooted at the current directory.

---

autoscan

The autoscan program can help you create a configure.in file for a software package. autoscan examines source files in the directory tree rooted at a directory given as a command line argument, or the current directory if none is given. It searches the source files for common portability problems and creates a file configure.scan which is a preliminary configure.in for that package.

---

autoupdate

The autoupdate program updates a configure.in file that calls Autoconf macros by their old names to use the current macro names.

---

ifnames

ifnames can help when writing a configure.in for a software package. It prints the identifiers that the package already uses in C preprocessor conditionals. If a package has already been set up to have some portability, this program can help you figure out what its configure needs to check for. It may help fill in some gaps in a configure.in generated by autoscan.

Installing Automake

Installation of Automake

Install Automake by running the following commands:

```
root:automake-1.4#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:automake-1.4#   make install
```

Contents

The Automake package contains the aclocal and automake programs

---

Description

aclocal

Automake includes a number of Autoconf macros which can be used in your package; some of them are actually required by Automake in certain situations. These macros must be defined in your aclocal.m4; otherwise they will not be seen by autoconf.

The aclocal program will automatically generate aclocal.m4 files based on the contents of configure.in. This provides a convenient way to get Automake–provided macros, without having to search around. Also, the aclocal mechanism is extensible for use by other packages.

---

automake

To create all the Makefile.in's for a package, run the automake program in the top level directory, with no arguments. automake will automatically find each appropriate Makefile.am (by scanning configure.in) and generate the corresponding Makefile.in.

Installing Bash

Installation of Bash

Install Bash by running the following commands:

```
root:bash-2.04#   ./configure --prefix=/usr --with-ncurses
root:bash-2.04#   make
root:bash-2.04#   make install
root:bash-2.04#   logout
root:~#   mv $LFS/usr/bin/bash $LFS/usr/bin/bashbug $LFS/bin
root:~#   chroot $LFS bash --login
```

Contents

The Bash package contains the bash program

Description

Bash is the Bourne−Again SHell, which is a widely used command interpreter on Unix systems. Bash is a program that reads from standard input, the keyboard. You type something and the program will evaluate what you have typed and do something with it, like running a program.

Installing Flex

Installation of Flex

Install Flex by running the following commands:

```
root:flex-2.5.4a#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:flex-2.5.4a#   make
root:flex-2.5.4a#   make install
```

Contents

The Flex package contains the flex program

Description

Flex is a tool for generating programs which regognize patterns in text. Pattern recognition is very useful in many applications. You set up rules what to look for and flex will make a program that looks for those patterns. The reason people use flex is that it is much easier to set up rules for what to look for than to write the actual program that finds the text.

Installing File

Installation of File

Install File by running the following commands:

```
root:file-3.31#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
--datadir=/usr/share/misc
root:file-3.31#   make
root:file-3.31#   make install
```

Contents

The File package contains the file program.

Description

File tests each specified file in an attempt to classify it. There are three sets of tests, performed in this order: filesystem tests, magic number tests, and language tests. The first test that succeeds causes the file type to be printed.

Installing Libtool

Installation of Libtool

Install Libtool by running the following commands:

```
root:libtool-1.3.5#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:libtool-1.3.5#   make
root:libtool-1.3.5#   make install
```

Contents

The Libtool package contains the libtool and libtoolize programs. It also contains the ltdl library.

Description

libtool

Libtool provides generalized library−building support services.

libtoolize

libtoolize provides a standard way to add libtool support to your package.

ltdl library

Libtool provides a small library, called `libltdl', that aims at hiding the various difficulties of dlopening libraries from programmers.

Installing Bin86

Installation of Bin86

Install Linux86 by running the following commands:

```
root:bin86#    make
root:bin86#   make PREFIX=/usr install
```

Contents

The Bin86 contains the as86, as86_encap, ld86, objdump86, nm86 and size86 programs.

Description

as86

as86 is an assembler for the 8086...80386 processors.

as86_encap

as86_encap is a shell script to call as86 and convert the created binary into a C file prog.v to be included in or linked with programs like boot block installers.

ld86

ld86 understands only the object files produced by the as86 assembler, it can link them into either an impure or a separate I&D executable.

objdump86

No description available.

nm86

No description available.

size86

No description available.

Installing Binutils

Installation of Binutils

Install Binutils by running the following commands:

```
root:binutils-2.10#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:binutils-2.10#   make -e tooldir=/usr
root:binutils-2.10#   make -e tooldir=/usr install
```

Description

The Binutils package contains the ld, as, ar, nm, objcopy, objdump, ranlib, size, strings, strip, c++filt, addr2line and nlmconv programs

---

Description

ld

ld combines a number of object and archive files, relocates their data and ties up symbol references. Often the last step in building a new compiled program to run is a call to ld.

---

as

as is primarily intended to assemble the output of the GNU C compiler gcc for use by the linker ld.

---

ar

The ar program creates, modifies, and extracts from archives. An archive is a single file holding a collection of other files in a structure that makes it possible to retrieve the original individual files (called members of the archive).

---

nm

nm lists the symbols from object files.

---

objcopy

objcopy utility copies the contents of an object file to another. objcopy uses the GNU BFD Library to read and write the object files. It can write the destination object file in a format different from that of the source object file.

---

objdump

objdump displays information about one or more object files. The options control what particular information to display. This information is mostly useful to programmers who are working on the compilation tools, as opposed to programmers who just want their program to compile and work.

---

ranlib

ranlib generates an index to the contents of an archive, and stores it in the archive. The index lists each symbol defined by a member of an archive that is a relocatable object file.

---

size

size lists the section sizes −−and the total size−− for each of the object files objfile in its argument list. By default, one line of output is generated for each object file or each module in an archive.

---

strings

For each file given, strings prints the printable character sequences that are at least 4 characters long (or the number specified with an option to the program) and are followed by an unprintable character. By default, it only prints the strings from the initialized and loaded sections of object files; for other types of files, it prints the strings from the whole file.

strings is mainly useful for determining the contents of non−text files.

---

strip

strip discards all or specific symbols from object files. The list of object files may include archives. At least one object file must be given. strip modifies the files named in its argument, rather than writing modified copies under different names.

---

c++filt

The C++ language provides function overloading, which means that you can write many functions with the same name (providing each takes parameters of different types). All C++ function names are encoded into a low−level assembly label (this process is known as mangling). The c++filt program does the inverse

mapping: it decodes (demangles) low−level names into user−level names so that the linker can keep these overloaded functions from clashing.

---

addr2line

addr2line translates program addresses into file names and line numbers. Given an address and an executable, it uses the debugging information in the executable to figure out which file name and line number are associated with a given address.

---

nlmconv

nlmconv converts relocatable object files into the NetWare Loadable Module files, optionally reading header files for NLM header information.

Installing Bzip2

Installation of Bzip2

Install Bzip2 by running the following commands:

```
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   make -f Makefile-libbz2_so
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   make bzip2recover libbz2.a
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   cp bzip2-shared /bin/bzip2
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   cp bzip2recover /bin
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   cp bzip2.1 /usr/share/man/man1
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   cp bzlib.h /usr/include
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   cp -a libbz2.so* libbz2.a /lib
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   rm /usr/lib/libbz2.a
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   cd /bin
root:bin#   rm bunzip2 && ln -s bzip2 bunzip2
root:bin#   rm bzcat && ln -s bzip2 bzcat
```

Although it's not strictly a part of a basic LFS system it's worth mentioning that you can donwload a patch for Tar which enables the tar program to compress and uncompress using bzip2/bunzip2 easily. With a plain tar you'll have to use constructions like bzcat file.tar.bz|tar xv or tar −−use−compress−prog=bunzip2 −xvf file.tar.bz2 to use bzip2 and bunzip2 with tar. This patch gives you the −y option so you can unpack a Bzip2 archive with tar xvfy file.tar.bz2. Applying this patch will be mentioned later on when you re−install the Tar package.

Contents

The Bzip2 packages contains the bzip2, bunzip2, bzcat and bzip2recover programs.

Description

Bzip2

bzip2 compresses files using the Burrows−Wheeler block sorting text compression algorithm, and Huffman coding. Compression is generally considerably better than that achieved by more conventional LZ77/LZ78−based compressors, and approaches the performance of the PPM family of statistical compressors.

Bunzip2

Bunzip2 decompresses files that are compressed with bzip2.

bzcat

bzcat (or bzip2 −dc) decompresses all specified files to the standard output.

bzip2recover

bzip2recover recovers data from damaged bzip2 files.

Installing Gettext

Installation of Gettext

Install Gettext by running the following commands:

```
root:gettext-0.10.35#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:gettext-0.10.35#   make
root:gettext-0.10.35#   make install
root:gettext-0.10.35#   mv /po-mode.el /usr/share/gettext
```

Contents

The gettext package contains the gettext, gettextize, msgcmp, msgcomm, msgfmt, msgmerge, msgunfmt and xgettext programs.

Description

gettext

The gettext package is used for internationalization (also known as i18n) and for localization (also known as l10n). Programs can be compiled with Native Language Support (NLS) which enable them to output messages in your native language rather than in the default English languge.

Installing Consoletools

Installation of Console−tools

Before you start installing Console−tools you have to unpack the console−tools−0.2.3.patch file.

Install Console−tools by running the following commands:

```
root:console-tools-0.2.3#   patch -Np1 -i
../console-tools-0.2.3.patch
root:console-tools-0.2.3#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:console-tools-0.2.3#   make
root:console-tools-0.2.3#   make install
root:console-tools-0.2.3#   cd /usr/share/keymaps
root:keymaps#   ln -s <path-to-kmap-file> defkeymap.kmap.gz
```

Please replace <path−to−kmap−file> by the correct path to the desired kmap.gz file. An example could be i386/qwerty/us.kmap.gz

---

Contents

The Console−tools package contains the charset, chvt, consolechars, deallocvt, dumpkeys, fgconsole, fix_bs_and_del, font2psf, getkeycodes, kbd_mode, loadkeys, loadunimap, mapscrn, mk_modmap, openvt, psfaddtable, psfgettable, psfstriptable, resizecons, saveunimap, screendump, setfont, setkeycodes, setleds, setmetamode, setvesablank, showcfont, showkey, splitfont, unicode_start, unicode_stop, vcstime, vt−is−URF8, writevt

---

Description

charset

charset sets an ACM for use in one of the G0/G1 charsets slots.

---

chvt

chvt changes foreground virtual terminal.

---

codepage

No description available.

---

consolechars

consolechars loads EGA/VGA console screen fonts, screen font maps and/or application−charset maps.

---

deallocvt

deallocvt deallocates unused virtual terminals.

---

dumpkeys

dumpkeys dumps keyboard translation tables.

---

fgconsole

fgconsole prints the number of the active virtual terminal.

---

fix_bs_and_del

No description available.

---

font2psf

No description available.

---

getkeycodes

getkeycodes prints the kernel scancode−to−keycode mapping table.

---

kbd_mode

kbd_mode reports or sets the keyboard mode.

---

loadkeys

loadkeys loads keyboard translation tables.

---

loadunimap

No description available.

---

mapscrn

No description available.

---

mk_modmap

No description available.

---

openvt

openvt starts a program on a new virtual terminal.

---

psfaddtable

psfaddtable adds a Unicode character table to a console font.

---

psfgettable

psfgettable extracts the embedded Unicode character table from a console font.

---

psfstriptable

psfstriptable removes the embedded Unicode character table from a console font.

---

resizecons

resizecons changes the kernel idea of the console size.

---

saveunimap

No description available.

screendump

No description available.

setfont

No description available.

setkeycodes

setkeycodes loads kernel scancode−to−keycode mapping table entries.

setleds

setleds sets the keyboard leds.

setmetamode

setmetamode defines the keyboard meta key handling.

setvesablank

No description available.

showcfont

showcfont displays all character in the current screenfont.

showkey

showkey examines the scancodes and keycodes sent by the keyboard.

splitfont

No description available.

unicode_start

unicode_start puts the console in Unicode mode.

unicode_stop

No description available.

vcstime

No description available.

vt−is−UTF8

vt−is−UTF8 checks whether the current virtual terminal is in UTF8− or byte−mode.

writevt

No description available.

Installing Consoledata

Installation of Console−data

Install Console−data by running the following commands:

```
root:console-data-1999.08.29#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:console-data-1999.08.29#   make
root:console-data-1999.08.29#   make install
```

Contents

The console−data package contains the data files that are used and needed by the console−tools package.

Installing Diffutils

Installation of Diffutils

Install Diffutils by running the following commands:

```
root:diffutils-2.7#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:diffutils-2.7#   make
root:diffutils-2.7#   make install
```

Contents

The Diffutils packagec contains the cmp, diff, diff3 and sdiff programs.

Description

cmp and diff

cmp and diff both compare two files and report their differences. Both programs have extra options which compare files in different situations.

---

diff3

The difference between diff and diff3 is that diff comprares 2 files, diff3 compares 3 files.

---

sdiff

sdiff merges two two files and interactively outputs the results.

Installing E2fsprogs

Installation of E2fsprogs

Install E2fsprogs by running the following commands:

```
root:e2fsprogs-1.19#    ./configure --prefix=/usr
--with-root-prefix= \
> --enable-elf-shlibs
root:e2fsprogs-1.19#    make
root:e2fsprogs-1.19#    make install
```

Contents

The e2fsprogs package contains the chattr, lsattr, uuidgen, badblocks, debugfs, dumpe2fs, e2fsck, e2label, fsck, fsck.ext2, mke2fs, mkfs.ext2, mklost+found and tune2fs programs.

Description

chattr

chattr changes the file attributes on a Linux second extended file system.

---

lsattr

lsattr lists the file attributes on a second extended file system.

---

uuidgen

The uuidgen program creates a new universally unique identifier (UUID) using the libuuid library. The new UUID can reasonably be considered unique among all UUIDs created on the local system, and among UUIDs created on other systems in the past and in the future.

---

badblocks

badblocks is used to search for bad blocks on a device (usually a disk partition).

---

debugfs

The debugfs program is a file system debugger. It can be used to examine and change the state of an ext2 file system.

---

dumpe2fs

dumpe2fs prints the super block and blocks group information for the filesystem present on a specified device.

---

e2fsck and fsck.ext2

e2fsck is used to check a Linux second extended file system. fsck.ext2 does the same as e2fsck.

---

e2label

e2label will display or change the filesystem label on the ext2 filesystem located on the specified device.

---

fsck

fsck is used to check and optionally repair a Linux file system.

---

mke2fs and mkfs.ext2

mke2fs is used to create a Linux second extended file system on a device (usually a disk partition). mkfs.ext2 does the same as mke2fs.

---

mklost+found

mklost+found is used to create a lost+found directory in the current working directory on a Linux second extended file system. mklost+found pre−allocates disk blocks to the directory to make it usable by e2fsck.

---

tune2fs

tune2fs adjusts tunable filesystem parameters on a Linux second extended filesystem.

Installing Ed

Installation of Ed

Install Ed by running the following commands:

```
root:ed-0.2#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:ed-0.2#   make
root:ed-0.2#   make install
root:ed-0.2#   mv /usr/bin/ed /usr/bin/red /bin
```

Contents

The Ed package contains the ed program.

Description

Ed is a line–oriented text editor. It is used to create, display, modify and otherwise manipulate text files.

Installing Fileutils

Installation of Fileutils

Install Fileutils by running the following commands:

```
root:fileutils-4.0#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:fileutils-4.0#   make
root:fileutils-4.0#   make install
root:fileutils-4.0#   cd /usr/bin
root:bin#   mv chgrp chmod chown cp dd df dir /bin
root:bin#   mv dircolors du install ln ls mkdir mkfifo /bin
root:bin#   mv mknod mv rm rmdir sync touch vdir /bin
```

Contents

The Fileutils package contains the chgrp, chmod, chown, cp, dd, df, dir, dircolors, du, install, ln, ls, mkdir, mkfifo, mknod, mv, rm, rmdir, sync, touch and vdir programs.

Description

chgrp

chgrp changes the group ownership of each given file to the named group, which can be either a group name or a numeric group ID.

---

chmod

chmod changes the permissions of each given file according to mode, which can be either a symbolic representation of changes to make, or an octal number representing the bit pattern for the new permissions.

---

chown

chown changes the user and/or group ownership of each given file.

---

cp

cp copies files from one place to another.

---

dd

dd copies a file (from the standard input to the standard output, by default) with a user−selectable blocksize, while optionally performing conversions on it.

---

df

df displays the amount of disk space available on the filesystem containing each file name argument. If no file name is given, the space available on all currently mounted filesystems is shown.

---

ls, dir and vdir

dir and vdir are versions of ls with different default output formats. These programs list each given file or directory name. Directory contents are sorted alphabetically. For ls, files are by default listed in columns, sorted vertically, if the standard output is a terminal; otherwise they are listed one per line. For dir, files are by default listed in columns, sorted vertically. For vdir, files are by default listed in long format.

---

dircolors

dircolors outputs commands to set the LS_COLOR environment variable. The LS_COLOR variable is use to change the default color scheme used by ls and related utilities.

---

du

du displays the amount of disk space used by each argument and for each subdirectory of directory arguments.

---

install

install copies files and sets their permission modes and, if possible, their owner and group.

---

ln

ln makes hard or soft (symbolic) links between files.

---

mkdir

mkdir creates directories with a given name.

---

mkfifo

mkfifo creates a FIFO with each given name.

---

mknod

mknod creates a FIFO, character special file, or block special file with the given file name.

---

mv

mv moves files from one directory to another or renames files, depending on the arguments given to mv.

---

rm

rm removes files or directories.

---

rmdir

rmdir removes directories, if they are empty.

---

sync

sync forces changed blocks to disk and updates the super block.

---

touch

touch changes the access and modification times of each given file to the current time. Files that do not exist are created empty.

Installing Grep

Installation of Grep

Install Grep by running the following commands:

```
root:grep-2.4.2#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:grep-2.4.2#   make
root:grep-2.4.2#   make install
```

Contents

The grep package contains the egrep, fgrep and grep programs.

Description

egrep

egrep prints lines from files matching an extended regular expression pattern.

fgrep

fgrep prints lines from files matching a list of fixed strings, separated by newlines, any of which is to be matched.

grep

grep prints lines from files matching a basic regular expression pattern.

Installing Gzip

Installation of Gzip

Install Gzip by running the following commands:

```
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   make
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   make install
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   cd /usr/bin
root:bin#   mv gzip /bin
root:bin#   rm gunzip /bin/gunzip
root:bin#   cd /bin
root:bin#   ln -s gzip gunzip
```

Contents

The Gzip package contains the gunzip, gzexe, gzip, zcat, zcmp, zdiff, zforece, zgrep, zmore and znew programs.

Description

gunzip

gunzip decompresses files that are compressed with gzip.

---

gzexe

gzexe allows you to compress executables in place and have them automatically uncompress and execute when you run them (at a penalty in performance).

---

gzip

gzip reduces the size of the named files using Lempel–Ziv coding (LZ77).

---

zcat

zcat uncompresses either a list of files on the command line or its standard input and writes the uncompressed data on standard output

---

zcmp

zcmp invokes the cmp program on compressed files.

---

zdiff

zdiff invokes the diff program on compressed files.

---

zforce

zforce forces a .gz extension on all gzip files so that gzip will not compress them twice. This can be useful for files with names truncated after a file transfer.

---

zgrep

zgrep invokes the grep program on compressed files.

---

zmore

Zmore is a filter which allows examination of compressed or plain text files one screenful at a time on a soft–copy terminal (similar to the more program).

---

znew

Znew recompresses files from .Z (compress) format to .gz (gzip) format.

Installing Ldso

Installation of Ld.so

Install Ld.so by running the following commands:

```
root:ld.so-1.9.9#   cd util
root:util#   make ldd ldconfig
root:util#   cp ldd /bin
root:util#   cp ldconfig /sbin
root:util#   cd ../man
root:man#   cp ldd.1 /usr/share/man/man1
root:man#   cp *.8 /usr/share/man/man8
root:man#   rm /usr/bin/ldd
root:man#   hash -r
```

The "hash –r" command is to make bash forget about the locations of previously executed commands. If you have executed ldd before, bash expects it to be found in /usr/bin. Since we moved it to /bin, the cache needs to be purged so bash can find it in /bin when you want to execute it again.

You might have noticed that we don't use the compiler optimizations for this package. The reason is that overriding the CFLAGS variable causes compilation problems. You would have to edit the Config.mk file and add the proper values to the CFLAGS variable and then compile the package. If you want to do that it's up to you. I don't think it's worth the trouble though. The ld and ldd programs usually are only rarely used.

Contents

From the Ld.so package we're using the ldconfig and ldd programs.

Description

ldconfig

ldconfig creates the necessary links and cache (for use by the run–time linker, ld.so) to the most recent shared libraries found in the directories specified on the command line, in the file /etc/ld.so.conf, and in the trusted directories (/usr/lib and /lib). ldconfig checks the header and file names of the libraries it encounters when determining which versions should have their links updated.

ldd

ldd prints the shared libraries required by each program or shared library specified on the command line.

Installing Lilo

Installation of Lilo

Edit the `Makefile` file and edit the CFLAGS varialbe if you want to add compiler optimization to this package.

Install Lilo by running the following commands:

```
root:lilo-21.5#   make
root:lilo-21.5#   make install
```

It appears that compilation of this package fails on certain machines when the −g compiler flag is being used. If you can't compile Lilo at all, please try removing the −g value from the CFLAGS variable in the `Makefile` file.

At the end of the installation the make install process will print a message stating that you have to execute /sbin/lilo to complete the update. Don't do this as it has no use. The /etc/lilo.conf isn't present yet. We will complete the installation of lilo in chapter 8.

Contents

The Lilo package contains the lilo program.

Description

lilo installs the Linux boot loader which is used to start a Linux system.

Installing Make

Installation of Make

Install Make by running the following commands:

```
root:make-3.79.1#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:make-3.79.1#   make
root:make-3.79.1#   make install
```

Contents

The Make package contains the make program.

Description

make determine automatically which pieces of a large program need to be recompiled, and issue the commands to recompile them.

Installing Modutils

Installation of Modutils

Install Modutils by running the following commands:

```
root:modutils-2.3.13#   ./configure
root:modutils-2.3.13#   make
root:modutils-2.3.13#   make install
```

Contents

The Modutils package contains the depmod, genksyms, insmod, insmod_ksymoops_clean, kerneld, kernelversion, ksyms, lsmod, modinfo, modprobe and rmmod programs.

Description

depmod

depmod handles dependency descriptions for loadable kernel modules.

---

genksyms

genksyms reads (on standard input) the output from gcc –E source.c and generates a file containing version information.

---

insmod

insmod installs a loadable module in the running kernel.

---

insmod_ksymoops_clean

insmod_ksymoops_clean deletes saved ksyms and modules not accessed in 2 days.

---

kerneld

kerneld performs kernel action in user space (such as on−demand loading of modules)

---

kernelversion

kernelversion reports the major version of the running kernel.

---

ksyms

ksyms displays exported kernel symbols.

---

lsmod

lsmod shows information about all loaded modules.

---

modinfo

modinfo examines an object file associated with a kernel module and displays any information that it can glean.

---

modprobe

Modprobe uses a Makefile−like dependency file, created by depmod, to automatically load the relevant module(s) from the set of modules available in predefined directory trees.

---

rmmod

rmmod unloads loadable modules from the running kernel.

Installing Procinfo

Installation of Procinfo

Install Procinfo by running the following commands:

```
root:procinfo-17#   sed "s/-ltermcap/-lncurses/" Makefile
>Makefile2
root:procinfo-17#   mv Makefile2 Makefile
root:procinfo-17#   make
root:procinfo-17#   make install
```

Contents

The Procinfo package contains the procinfo program.

Description

procinfo gathers some system data from the /proc directory and prints it nicely formatted on the standard output device.

Installing Procps

Installation of Procps

Edit the `Makefile` file and edit the CFLAGS variable if you want to add compiler optimizations to this package.

Install Procps by running the following commands:

```
root:procps-2.0.7#   sed "s/XConsole/#XConsole/" Makefile
>Makefile2
root:procps-2.0.7#   mv Makefile2 Makefile
root:procps-2.0.7#   make
root:procps-2.0.7#   make install
root:procps-2.0.7#   mv /usr/bin/kill /bin
```

Contents

The Procps package contains the free, kill, oldps, ps, skill, snice, sysctl, tload, top, uptime, vmstat, w and watch programs.

Description

free

free displays the total amount of free and used physical and swap memory in the system, as well as the shared memory and buffers used by the kernel.

---

kill

kills sends signals to processes.

---

oldps and ps

ps gives a snapshot of the current processes.

---

skill

skill sends signals to process matching a criteria.

---

snice

snice changes the scheduling priority for process matching a criteria.

---

sysctl

sysctl modifies kernel parameters at runtime.

---

tload

tload prints a graph of the current system load average to the specified tty (or the tty of the tload process if none is specified).

---

top

top provides an ongoing look at processor activity in real time.

---

uptime

uptime gives a one line display of the following information: the current time, how long the system has been running, how many users are currently logged on, and the system load averages for the past 1, 5, and 15 minutes.

---

vmstat

vmstat reports information about processes, memory, paging, block IO, traps, and cpu activity.

---

w

w displays information about the users currently on the machine, and their processes.

---

watch

watch runs command repeatedly, displaying its output (the first screenfull).

Installing Psmisc

Installation of Psmisc

Edit the `Makefile` file and edit the CFLAGS variable if you want to add compiler optimizations to this package.

Install Psmisc by running the following commands:

```
root:psmisc#   sed "s/-ltermcap/-lncurses/" Makefile
>Makefile2
root:psmisc#   mv Makefile2 Makefile
root:psmisc#   make
root:psmisc#   make install
```

Contents

The Psmisc package contains the fuser, killall and pstree programs.

Description

fuser

fuser displays the PIDs of processes using the specified files or file systems.

---

killall

killall sends a signal to all processes running any of the specified commands.

---

pstree

pstree shows running processes as a tree.

Installing Sed

Installation of Sed

Install Sed by running the following commands:

```
root:sed-3.02#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:sed-3.02#   make
root:sed-3.02#   make install
root:sed-3.02#   mv /usr/bin/sed /bin
```

Contents

The Sed package contains the sed program.

Description

sed is a stream editor. A stream editor is used to perform basic text transformations on an input stream (a file or input from a pipeline).

Installing Shadowpwd

Installation of Shadow Password Suite

Install the Shadow Password Suite by running the following commands:

```
root:shadow-19990827#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:shadow-19990827#   make
root:shadow-19990827#   make install
root:shadow-19990827#   cd etc
root:etc#   cp limits login.access \
> login.defs.linux shells suauth /etc
root:etc#   mv /etc/login.defs.linux /etc/login.defs
```

Contents

The Shadow Password Suite contains the chage, chfn, chsh, expiry, faillog, gpasswd, lastlog, login, newgrp, passwd, sg, su, chpasswd, dpasswd, groupadd, groupdel, groupmod, grpck, grpconv, grpunconv, logoutd, mkpasswd, newusers, pwck, pwconv, pwunconv, useradd, userdel, usermod and vipw programs.

Description

chage

chage changes the number of days between password changes and the date of the last password change.

---

chfn

chfn changes user fullname, office number, office extension, and home phone number information for a user's account.

---

chsh

chsh changes the user login shell.

---

expiry

It's currently unknown what this program is for.

faillog

faillog formats the contents of the failure log,/var/log/faillog, and maintains failure counts and limits.

gpasswd

gpasswd is used to administer the /etc/group file

lastlog

lastlog formats and prints the contents of the last login log, /var/log/lastlog. The login–name, port, and last login time will be printed.

login

login is used to establish a new session with the system.

newgrp

newgrp is used to change the current group ID during a login session.

passwd

passwd changes passwords for user and group accounts.

sg

sg executes command as a different group ID.

su

Change the effective user id and group id to that of a user. This replaces the su programs that's installed from the Shellutils package.

chpasswd

chpasswd reads a file of user name and password pairs from standard input and uses this information to update a group of existing users.

---

dpasswd

dpasswd adds, deletes, and updates dialup passwords for user login shells.

---

groupadd

The groupadd command creates a new group account using the values specified on the command line and the default values from the system.

---

groupdel

The groupdel command modifies the system account files, deleting all entries that refer to group.

---

groupmod

The groupmod command modifies the system account files to reflect the changes that are specified on the command line.

---

grpck

grpck verifies the integrity of the system authentication information.

---

grpconv

grpunconv converts to shadow group files from normal group files.

---

grpunconv

grpunconv converts from shadow group files to normal group files.

---

logoutd

logoutd enforces the login time and port restrictions specified in /etc/porttime.

---

mkpasswd

mkpasswd reads a file in the format given by the flags and converts it to the corresponding database file format.

---

newusers

newusers reads a file of user name and cleartext password pairs and uses this information to update a group of existing users or to create new users.

---

pwck

pwck verifies the integrity of the system authentication information.

---

pwconv

pwconv converts to shadow passwd files from normal passwd files.

---

pwunconv

pwunconv converts from shadow passwd files to normal files.

---

useradd

useradd creates a new user or update default new user information.

---

userdel

userdel modifies the system account files, deleting all entries that refer to a specified login name.

---

usermod

usermod modifies the system account files to reflect the changes that are specified on the command line.

---

vipw and vigr

vipw and vigr will edit the files /etc/passwd and /etc/group, respectively. With the –s flag, they will edit the shadow versions of those files, /etc/shadow and /etc/gshadow, respectively.

Installing Shellutils

Installation of Shell Utils

Install Shellutils by running the following commands:

```
root:sh-utils-2.0#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:sh-utils-2.0#   make
root:sh-utils-2.0#   make install
root:sh-utils-2.0#   cd /usr/bin
root:bin#   mv date echo false pwd stty /bin
root:bin#   mv su true uname hostname /bin
```

Contents

The Shellutils package contains the basename, chroot, date, dirname, echo, env, expr, factor, false, groups, hostid, hostname, id, logname, nice, nohup, pathchk, pinky, printenv, printf, pwd, seq, sleep, stty, su, tee, test, true, tty, uname, uptime, users, who, whoami and yes programs.

Description

basename

basename strips directory and suffixes from filenames.

---

chroot

chroot runs a command or interactive shell with special root directory.

---

date

date displays the current time in a specified format, or sets the system date.

---

dirname

dirname strips non–directory suffixes from file name.

---

echo

echo displays a line of text.

---

env

env runs a program in a modified environment.

---

expr

expr evaluates expressions.

---

factor

factor prints the prime factors of all specified integer numbers.

---

false

false always exits with a status code indicating failure.

---

groups

groups prints the groups a user is in.

---

hostid

hostid prints the numeric identifier (in hexadecimal) for the current host.

---

hostname

hostname sets or prints the name of the current host system

---

id

id prints the real and effective UIDs and GIDs of a user or the current user.

---

logname

logname prints the current user's login name.

nice

nice runs a program with modified scheduling priority.

nohup

nohup runs a command immune to hangups, with output to a non−tty

pathchk

pathchk checks whether file names are valid or portable.

pinky

pinky is a lightweight finger utility which retrieves information about a certain user

printenv

printenv prints all or part of the environment.

printf

printf formats and print data (the same as the printf C function).

pwd

pwd prints the name of the current/working directory

seq

seq prints numbers in a certain range with a certain increment.

sleep

sleep delays for a specified amount of time.

stty

stty changes and prints terminal line settings.

su

su runs a shell with substitute user and group IDs

tee

tee reads from standard input and write to standard output and files.

test

test checks file types and compares values.

true

True always exitx with a status code indicating success.

tty

tty prints the file name of the terminal connected to standard input.

uname

uname prints system information.

uptime

uptime tells how long the system has been running.

users

users prints the user names of users currently logged in to the current host.

who

who shows who is logged on.

whoami

whoami prints your effective userid.

yes

yes outputs a string repeatedly until killed.

Installing Vim

Installation of Vim

You need to unpack both the vim−rt and vim−src packages to install Vim. Both packages will unpack their files into the vim−5.7 directory. This won't overwrite any files from the other package. So it doesn't mattter in which order you do it. Install Vim by running the following commands:

```
root:vim-5.7#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:vim-5.7#   make
root:vim-5.7#   make install
root:vim-5.7#   cd /usr/bin
root:bin#   ln -s vim vi
```

If you are planning on installing the X Window system on your LFS system, you might want to re−compile Vim after you have installed X. Vim comes with a nice GUI version of the editor which requires X and a few other libraries to be installed. For more information read the Vim documentation.

Contents

The Vim package contains the ctags, etags, ex, gview, gvim, rgview, rgvim, rview, rvim, view, vim, vimtutor and xxd programs.

Description

ctags

ctags generate tag files for source code.

---

etags

etags does the same as ctags but it can generate cross reference files which list information about the various source objects found in a set of lanugage files.

---

ex

ex starts vim in Ex mode.

---

gview

gview is the GUI version of view.

---

gvim

gvim is the GUI version of vim.

---

rgview

rgview is teh GUI version of rview.

---

rgvim

rgvim is the GUI version of rvim.

---

rview

rview is a restricted version of view. No shell commands can be started and Vim can't be suspended.

---

rvim

rvim is the restricted version of vim. No shell commands can be started and Vim can't be suspended.

---

view

view starts vim in read−only mode.

---

vim

vim starts vim in the normal, default way.

---

vimtutor

vimtutor starts the Vim tutor.

---

xxd

xxd makes a hexdump or does the reverse.

Installing Sysklogd

Installation of Sysklogd

Edit the `Makefile` file and find this line: *CFLAGS= $(RPM_OPT_FLAGS) −O3 −DSYSV −fomit−frame−pointer −Wall −fno−strength−reduce*. Add the proper −mcpu= and −march= option to this variable and save the file.

Install Sysklogd by running the following commands:

```
root:sysklogd-1.3-31#   make
root:sysklogd-1.3-31#   make install
```

Contents

The Sysklogd package contains the klogd and syslogd programs.

Description

klogd

klogd is a system daemon which intercepts and logs Linux kernel messages.

---

syslogd

Syslogd provides a kind of logging that many modern programs use.Every logged message contains at least a time and a hostname field, normally a program name field, too, but that depends on how trusty the logging program is.

Installing Sysvinit

Installation of Sysvinit

Edit the `src/Makefile` file and edit the CFLAGS variable if you want to add compiler optimizations to this package.

Install Sysvinit by running the following commands:

```
root:sysvinit-2.78#   cd src
root:sysvinit-2.78#   make
root:sysvinit-2.78#   make install
```

Contents

The Sysvinit package contains the pidof, last, lastb, mesg, utmpdump, wall, halt, init, killall5, poweroff, reboot, runlevel, shutdown, sulogin and telinit programs.

Description

pidof

Pidof finds the process id's (pids) of the named programs and prints those id's on standard output.

---

last

last searches back through the file /var/log/wtmp (or the file designated by the −f flag) and displays a list of all users logged in (and out) since that file was created.

---

lastb

lastb is the same as last, except that by default it shows a log of the file /var/log/btmp, which contains all the bad login attempts.

---

mesg

Mesg controls the access to your terminal by others. It's typically used to allow or disallow other users to write to your terminal.

utmpdump

utmpdumps prints the content of a file (usually /var/run/utmp) on standard output in a user friendly format.

wall

Wall sends a message to everybody logged in with their mesg permission set to yes.

halt

Halt notes that the system is being brought down in the file /var/log/wtmp, and then either tells the kernel to halt, reboot or poweroff the system. If halt or reboot is called when the system is not in runlevel 0 or 6, shutdown will be invoked instead (with the flag −h or −r).

init

Init is the parent of all processes. Its primary role is to create processes from a script stored in the file /etc/inittab. This file usually has entries which cause init to spawn gettys on each line that users can log in. It also controls autonomous processes required by any particular system.

killall5

killall5 is the SystemV killall command. It sends a signal to all processes except the processes in its own session, so it won't kill the shell that is running the script it was called from.

poweroff

poweroff is equivalent to shutdown −h −p now. It halts the computer and switches off the computer (when using an APM compliant BIOS and APM is enabled in the kernel).

reboot

reboot is equivalent to shutdown −r now. It reboots the computer.

runlevel

Runlevel reads the system utmp file (typically /var/run/utmp) to locate the runlevel record, and then prints the previous and current system runlevel on its standard output, separated by a single space.

shutdown

shutdown brings the system down in a secure way. All logged−in users are notified that the system is going down, and login is blocked.

sulogin

sulogin is invoked by init when the system goes into single user mode (this is done through an entry in /etc/inittab). Init also tries to execute sulogin when it is passed the −b flag from the bootmonitor (eg, LILO).

telinit

telinit sends appropriate signals to init, telling it which runlevel to change to.

Installing Tar

Installation of Tar

Install Tar by running the following commands:

```
root:tar-1.13#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:tar-1.13#   make
root:tar-1.13#   make install
root:tar-1.13#   mv /usr/bin/tar /bin
```

If you want to apply the Bzip2 tar patch which gives you the –y option to tar so you can use bzip2 files with tar, first download the patch from http://sourceware.cygnus.com/bzip2/ and apply it by running the following command within the src directory under the tar–1.13 directory:

```
root:src#   patch -i ../../gnutarpatch.txt
```

Contents

The tar package contains the tar and rmt programs.

Description

tar

tar is an archiving program designed to store and extract files from an archive file known as a tarfile.

---

rmt

rmt is a program used by the remote dump and restore programs in manipulating a magnetic tape drive through an interprocess communication connection.

Installing Textutils

Installation of Textutils

Install Textutuils by running the following commands:

```
root:textutils-2.0#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:textutils-2.0#   make
root:textutils-2.0#   make install
root:textutils-2.0#   mv /usr/bin/cat /bin
```

Contents

The Textutils package contains the cat, cksum, comm, split, cut, expand, fmt, fold, head, join, md5sum, nl, od, paste, pr, ptx, sort, split, sum, tac, tail, tr, tsort, unexpand, uniq and wc programs.

Description

cat

cat concatenates file(s) or standard input to standard output.

cksum

cksum prints CRC checksum and byte counts of each specified file.

comm

comm compares two sorted files line by line.

csplit

cplit outputs pieces of a file separated by (a) pattern(s) to files xx01, xx02, ..., and outputs byte counts of each piece to standard output.

cut

cut prints selected parts of lines from specified files to standard output.

expand

expand converts tabs in files to spaces, writing to standard output.

fmt

fmt reformats each paragraph in the specified file(s), writing to standard output.

fold

fold wraps input lines in each specified file (standard input by default), writing to standard output.

head

Print first xx (10 by default) lines of each specified file to standard output.

join

join joins lines of two files on a common field.

md5sum

md5sum prints or checks MD5 checksums.

nl

nl writes each specified file to standard output, with line numbers added.

od

od writes an unambiguous representation, octal bytes by default, of a specified file to standard output.

paste

paste writes lines consisting of the sequentially corresponding lines from each specified file, separated by TABs, to standard output.

---

pr

pr paginates or columnates files for printing.

---

ptx

ptx produces a permuted index of file contents.

---

sort

sort writes sorted concatenation of files to standard output.

---

split

split outputs fixed−size pieces of an input file to PREFIXaa, PREFIXab, ...

---

sum

sum prints checksum and block counts for each specified file.

---

tac

tac writes each specified file to standard output, last line first.

---

tail

tail print the last xx (10 by default) lines of each specified file to standard output.

---

tr

tr translates, squeezes, and/or deletes characters from standard input, writing to standard output.

---

tsort

tsort writes totally ordered lists consistent with the partial ordering in specified files.

unexpand

unexpand converts spaces in each file to tabs, writing to standard output.

uniq

uniq discards all but one of successive identical lines from files or standard input and writes to files or standard output.

wc

wc prints line, word, and byte counts for each specified file, and a total line if more than one file is specified.

Installing Utillinux

Installation of Util−Linux

Before we can install the package we have to edit the MCONFIG file, find and modify the following variables as follows:

HAVE_SLN=yes
HAVE_TSORT=yes

Now find the following lines in the MCONFIG file:

```
ifeq "$(CPU)" "intel"
  OPT=        −pipe −O2 −m486 −fomit−frame−pointer
else
  ifeq "$(CPU)" "arm"
    OPT=      −pipe −O2 −fsigned−char −fomit−frame−pointer
  else
    OPT=      −O2 −fomit−frame−pointer
  endif
endif
```

Modify the proper OPT variable to include the −mcpu= and −march= options. If you modify the first OPT variable, replace *−m486* with the *−mcpu* variable.

Install Util−Linux by running the following commands:

```
root:util-linux-2.10m#   ./configure
root:util-linux-2.10m#   make
root:util-linux-2.10m#   make install
```

Contents

The Util−linux package contains the arch, dmesg, kill, more, mount, umount, agetty, blockdev, cfdisk, ctrlaltdel, elvtune, fdisk, fsck.minix, hwclock, kbdrate, losetup, mkfs, mkfs.bfs, mkfs.minix, mkswap, sfdisk, swapoff, swapon, cal, chkdupexe, col, colcrt, colrm, column, cytune, ddate, fdformat, getopt, hexdump, ipcrm, ipcs, logger, look, mcookie, namei, rename, renice, rev, script, setfdprm, setsid, setterm, ul, whereis, write, ramsize, rdev, readprofile, rootflags, swapdev, tunelp and vidmode programs.

Description

arch

arch prints the machine architecture.

dmesg

dmesg is used to examine or control the kernel ring buffer (boot messages from the kernel).

kill

kill sends a specified signal to the specified process.

more

more is a filter for paging through text one screenful at a time.

mount

mount mounts a filesystem from a device to a directory (mount point).

umount

umount unmounts a mounted filesystem.

agetty

agetty opens a tty port, prompts for a login name and invokes the /bin/login command.

blockdev

No description available.

cfdisk

cfdisk is an libncurses based disk partition table manipulator.

ctrlaltdel

ctrlaltdel sets the function of the CTRL+ALT+DEL key combination (hard or soft reset).

elvtune

elvtune allows to tune the I/O elevator per blockdevice queue basis.

fdisk

fdisk is a disk partition table manipulator.

fsck.minix

fsck.minix performs a consistency check for the Linux MINIX filesystem.

hwclock

hwclock queries and sets the hardware clock (Also called the RTC or BIOS clock).

kbdrate

kbdrate resets the keyboard repeat rate and delay time.

losetup

losetup sets up and controls loop devices.

mkfs

mkfs builds a Linux filesystem on a device, usually a harddisk partition.

mkfs.bfs

mkfs.bfs creates a SCO bfs file system on a device, usually a harddisk partition.

mkfs.minix

mkfs.minix creates a Linux MINIX filesystem on a device, usually a harddisk partition.

mkswap

mkswap sets up a Linux swap area on a device or in a file.

sfdisk

sfdisk is a disk partition table manipulator.

swapoff

swapoff disables devices and files for paging an swapping.

swapon

swapon enables devices and files for paging and swapping.

cal

cal displays a simple calender.

chkdupexe

chkdupexe finds duplicate executables.

col

col filters reverse line feeds from input.

colcrt

colcrt filters nroff output for CRT previewing.

---

colrm

colrm removes columns from a file.

---

column

column columnates lists.

---

cytune

cytune queries and modifies the interruption threshold for the Cyclades driver.

---

ddate

ddate converts Gregorian dates to Discordian dates.

---

fdformat

fdformat low−level formats a floppy disk.

---

getopt

getops parses command options the same way as the getopt C command.

---

hexdump

hexdump displays specified files, or standard input, in a user specified format (ascii, decimal, hexadecimal, octal).

---

ipcrm

ipcrm removes a specified resource.

---

ipcs

ipcs provides information on ipc facilities.

logger

logger makes entries in the system log.

look

look displays lines beginning with a given string.

mcookie

mcookie generates magic cookies for xauth.

namei

namei follows a pathname until a terminal point is found.

rename

rename renames files.

renice

renice alters priority of running processes.

rev

rev reverses lines of a file.

script

script makes typescript of terminal session.

setfdprm

setfdprm sets user−provides floppy disk parameters.

---

setsid

setsid runs programs in a new session.

---

setterm

setterm sets terminal attributes.

---

ul

ul reads a file and translates occurences of underscores to the sequence which indicates underlining for the terminal in use.

---

whereis

whereis locates a binary, source and manual page for a command.

---

write

write sends a message to another user.

---

ramsize

ramsize queries and sets RAM disk size.

---

rdev

rdev queries and sets image root device, swap device, RAM disk size, or video mode.

---

readprofile

readprofile reads kernel profiling information.

---

rootflags

rootflags queries and sets extra information used when mounting root.

swapdev

swapdev queries and sets swap device.

tunelp

tunelp sets various paramters for the lp device.

vidmode

vidmode queries and sets the video mode.

Installing Man−pages

Installation of Man−pages

Install Man−pages by running the following commands:

```
root:man-pages-1.30#   cp -av man2 man3 man4 \
> man5 man6 man7 /usr/share/man
root:man-pages-1.30#   cd man8
root:man8#   cp tzselect.8 zdump.8 \
> zic.8 /usr/share/man/man8
```

Contents

The Man−pages package contains various manual pages that don't come with the packages.

Description

Examples of provided manual pages are the manual pages describing all the C and C++ functions, few important /dev/ files and more.

Removing old NSS library files

If you have copied the NSS Library files from your normal Linux system to the LFS system (because your normal system runs glibc–2.0) it's time to remove them now by running:

```
root:~#     rm /lib/libnss*.so.1 /lib/libnss*2.0*
```

Configuring essential software

Now that all software is installed, all that we need to do to get a few programs running properly is to create their configuration files.

Configuring Vim

By default Vim runs in vi compatible mode. Some people might like this, but I have a high preference to run vim in vim mode (else I wouldn't have included Vim in this book but the original Vi). Create the `/root/.vimrc` containing the following:

```
" Begin /root/.vimrc

set nocompatible
set bs=2

" End /root/.vimrc
```

Configuring Glibc

We need to create the /etc/nsswitch.conf file. Although glibc should provide defaults when this file is missing or corrupt, it's defaults don't work work well with networking which will be dealt with in a later chapter. Also, our timezone needs to be setup.

Create a new file `/etc/nsswitch.conf` containing the following:

```
# Begin /etc/nsswitch.conf

passwd: files
group: files
shadow: files

hosts: files dns
networks: files

protocols: db files
services: db files
ethers: db files
rpc: db files

netgroup: db files
```

End /etc/nsswitch.conf

Run the **tzselect** script and answer the questions regarding your timezone. When you're done, the script will give you the location of the timezone file you need.

Create the `/etc/localtime` symlink by running:

```
root:~#   cd /etc
root:etc#   rm localtime
root:etc#   ln -s ../usr/share/zoneinfo/<tzselect's output> \
> localtime
```

tzselect's output can be something like *EST5EDT* or *Canada/Eastern*. The symlink you would create with that information would be *ln −s ../usr/share/zoneinfo/EST5EDT localtime* or *ln −s ../usr/share/zoneinfo/Canada/Eastern localtime*

Configuring Dynamic Loader

By default the dynamic loader searches a few default paths for dynamic libraries, so there normally isn't a need for the `/etc/ld.so.conf` file unless you have extra directories in which you want the system to search for paths. The `/usr/local/lib` directory isn't searched through for dynamic libraries by default, so we want to add this path so when you install software you won't be suprised by them not running for some reason.

Create a new file `/etc/ld.so.conf` containing the following:

```
# Begin /etc/ld.so.conf

/lib
/usr/lib
/usr/local/lib

# End /etc/ld.so.conf
```

Although it's not necessary to add the `/lib` and `/usr/lib` directories it doesn't hurt. This way you see right away what's being searched and don't have to remeber the default search paths if you don't want to.

Configuring Lilo

We're not going to create lilo's configuration file from scratch, but we'll use the file from your normal Linux system. This file is different on every machine and thus I can't create it here. Since you would want to have the same options regarding lilo as you have when you're using your normal Linux system you would create the file exactly as it is on the normal system.

Copy the Lilo configuration file and kernel images that Lilo uses by running the following commands from a shell on your normal Linux system. Don't execute these commands from your chroot'ed shell.

```
root:~#   cp /etc/lilo.conf $LFS/etc
root:~#   cp /boot/<kernel images> $LFS/boot
```

Before you can execute the second command you need to know the names of the kernel images. You can't just copy all files from the /boot directory. The /etc/lilo.conf file contains the names of the kernel images you're using. Open the file and look for lines like this:

```
image=/boot/vmlinuz
```

Look for all *image* variables and their values represent the name and location of the image files. These files will usually be in /boot but they might be in other directories as well, depending on your distribution's conventions.

Configuring Sysklogd

Create a new file `/etc/syslog.conf` containing the following:

```
# Begin /etc/syslog.conf

auth,authpriv.* –/var/log/auth.log
*.*;auth,authpriv.none –/var/log/sys.log
daemon.* –/var/log/daemon.log
kern.* –/var/log/kern.log
mail.* –/var/log/mail.log
user.* –/var/log/user.log
*.emerg *

# End /etc/syslog.conf
```

Configuring Shadow Password Suite

This package contains the utilities to modify user's passwords, add new users/groups, delete users/groups and more. I'm not going to explain to you what 'password shadowing' means. You can read all about that in the doc/HOWTO file within the unpacked shadow password suite's source tree. There's one thing you should keep in mind, if you decide to use shadow support, that programs that need to verify passwords (examples are xdm, ftp daemons, pop3 daemons, etc) need to be 'shadow−compliant', eg. they need to be able to work with shadow'ed passwords.

Shadow'ed passwords are not enabled by default. Simply installing the shadow password suite does not enable shadow'ed passwords.

Now is a very good moment to read chapter 5 of the doc/HOWTO file. You can read how you can enable shadow'ed passwords, how to test whether shadowing works and if not, how to disable it again.

Configuring Sysvinit

Create a new file `/etc/inittab` containing the following:

```
# Begin /etc/inittab

id:3:initdefault:

si::sysinit:/etc/init.d/rcS

l0:0:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 0
l1:S1:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 1
l2:2:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 2
l3:3:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 3
l4:4:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 4
l5:5:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 5
l6:6:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 6

f1:0:respawn:/sbin/sulogin
f2:6:respawn:/sbin/sulogin

ca:12345:ctrlaltdel:/sbin/shutdown −t1 −a −r now

su:S1:respawn:/sbin/sulogin
1:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty /dev/tty1 9600
2:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty /dev/tty2 9600
3:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty /dev/tty3 9600
4:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty /dev/tty4 9600
5:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty /dev/tty5 9600
6:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty /dev/tty6 9600
```

End /etc/inittab

Creating the /var/run/utmp,wtmp and btmp files

Programs like login, shutdown, uptime and others want to read from and write to the /var/run/utmp /var/run/btmp and /var/run/wtmp. These files contain information about who is currently logged in. It also contains information on when the computer was last booted and shutdown and a record of the bad login attemps.

Create these files with their proper permissions by running the following commands:

```
root:~#   cd /var/run
root:run#   touch btmp utmp wtmp
root:run#   chmod 0644 btmp utmp wtmp
```

Creating root password

Choose a password for user root and create it by running the following command:

```
root:~#   passwd root
```

Chapter 6. Creating system boot scripts

What is being done here

This chapter will create the necessary scripts that are run at boottime. These scripts perform tasks such as remounting the root file system mounted read−only by the kernel into read−write mode, activiating the swap partition(s), running a check on the root file system to make sure it's intact and starting the daemons that the system uses.

Creating directories

We need to start by creating a few extra directories that are used by the boot scripts. Create these directories by running:

```
root:~#   cd /etc
root:etc#   mkdir sysconfig rc0.d rc1.d rc2.d rc3.d
root:etc#   mkdir rc4.d rc5.d rc6.d init.d rcS.d
```

Creating the rc script

The first main bootscript is the `/etc/init.d/rc` script. Create a new file `/etc/init.d/rc` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/rc
#
# By Jason Pearce  − jason.pearce@linux.org
# Modified by Gerard Beekmans − gerard@linuxfromscratch.org

source /etc/init.d/functions

# Un−comment the following for debugging.
# debug=echo

#
# Start script or program.
#
startup() {
case "$1" in
        *.sh)
                $debug sh "$@"
                ;;
        *)
                $debug "$@"
                ;;
esac
}

# Ignore CTRL−C only in this shell, so we can interrupt subprocesses.
trap ":" INT QUIT TSTP

# Set onlcr to avoid staircase effect.
stty onlcr 0>&1

# Now find out what the current and what the previous runlevel are.
runlevel=$RUNLEVEL
# Get first argument. Set new runlevel to this argument.

[ "$1" != "" ] && runlevel=$1
if [ "$runlevel" = "" ]
then
        echo "Usage: $0 <runlevel>" >&2
        exit 1
fi

previous=$PREVLEVEL
```

```
[ "$previous" = "" ] && previous=N

export runlevel previous

# Is there an rc directory for this new runlevel?

if [ −d /etc/rc$runlevel.d ]
then
        # First, run the KILL scripts for this runlevel.
        if [ $previous != N ]
        then
                for i in /etc/rc$runlevel.d/K*
                do
                [ ! −f $i ] && continue

                        suffix=${i#/etc/rc$runlevel.d/K[0−9][0−9]}
                        previous_start=/etc/rc$previous.d/S[0−9][0−9]$suffix
                        sysinit_start=/etc/rcS.d/S[0−9][0−9]$suffix

                        # Stop the service if there is a start script
                        # in the previous run level.
                        [ ! −f $previous_start ] &&
                        [ ! −f $sysinit_start] && continue

                        startup $i stop
                        if [ $? != 0 ]
                        then
        echo −n "You should not read this error message. It means "
        echo "that an unforseen error "
        echo −n "took place and subscript $i exited with "
        echo "return value $? for an unknown "
        echo −n "reason. If you're able to trace this error down to "
        echo "a bug in one of the files "
        echo "provided by this book, please be so kind to inform us at "
        echo "lfs−discuss@linuxfromscratch.org"
                        fi

                done
        fi

        # Now run the START scripts for this runlevel.
        for i in /etc/rc$runlevel.d/S*
        do
                [ ! −f $i ] && continue

                if [ $previous != N ]
        then
                        # Find start script in previous runlevel and
                        # stop script in this runlevel.
                        suffix=${i#/etc/rc$runlevel.d/S[0−9][0−9]}
                        stop=/etc/rc$runlevel.d/K[0−9][0−9]$suffix
```

```
                previous_start=/etc/rc$previous.d/S[0−9][0−9]$suffix

                # If there is a start script in the previous
                # level
                # and _no_ stop script in this level, we don't
                # have to re−start the service.
                [ −f $previous_start ] && [ ! −f $stop ] &&
                continue
            fi

            case "$runlevel" in
                0|6)
                    startup $i stop
if [ $? != 0 ]
then
        echo −n "You should not read this error message. It means "
        echo "that an unforseen error "
        echo −n "took place and subscript $i exited with "
        echo "return value $? for an unknown "
        echo −n "reason. If you're able to trace this error down to "
        echo "a bug in one of the files "
        echo "provided by this book, please be so kind to inform us at "
        echo "lfs−discuss@linuxfromscratch.org"
                    fi
                    ;;
                *)
                    startup $i start
                    if [ $? != 0 ]
                    then
        echo −n "You should not read this error message. It means "
        echo "that an unforseen error "
        echo −n "took place and subscript $i exited with "
        echo "return value $? for an unknown "
        echo −n "reason. If you're able to trace this error down to "
        echo "a bug in one of the files "
        echo "provided by this book, please be so kind to inform us at "
        echo "lfs−discuss@linuxfromscratch.org"
                    fi
                    ;;
            esac
        done
fi

# End /etc/init.d/rc
```

Creating the rcS script

The second main bootscript is the `rcS` script. Create a new file `/etc/init.d/rcS` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/rcS

runlevel=S
prevlevel=N
umask 022
export runlevel prevlevel

trap ":" INT QUIT TSTP

for i in /etc/rcS.d/S??*
do
        [ ! -f  "$i" ] && continue;
                $i start
done

# End /etc/init.d/rcS
```

Creating the functions script

Create a new file `/etc/init.d/functions` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/functions

COL=70
SET_COL="echo –en \\033[${COL}G"
NORMAL="echo –en \\033[0;39m"
SUCCESS="echo –en \\033[1;32m"
FAILURE="echo –en \\033[1;31m"

evaluate_retval()
{
        if [ $? = 0 ]
        then
                print_status success
        else
                print_status failure
        fi
}

print_status()
{
        if [ $# = 0 ]
        then
                echo "Usage: print_status {success|failure}"
                exit 1
        fi

        case "$1" in
                success)
                        $SET_COL
                        echo –n "[  "
                        $SUCCESS
                        echo –n "OK"
                        $NORMAL
                        echo "  ]"
                        echo –en "\r"
                        ;;
                failure)
                        $SET_COL
                        echo –n "["
                        $FAILURE
                        echo –n "FAILED"
                        $NORMAL
                        echo –n "]"
```

```
                echo -en "\r"
                ;;
        esac

}

loadproc()
{
        if [ $# = 0 ]
        then
                echo "Usage: loadproc {program}"
                exit 1
        fi

        base=`basename $1`

        pidlist=`pidof -o $$ -o $PPID -o %PPID -x $base`

        pid=""

        for apid in $pidlist
        do
                if [ -d /proc/$apid ]
                then
                        pid="$pid $apid"
                fi
        done

        if [ ! -n "$pid" ]
        then
                $*
                evaluate_retval
        else
                print_status failure
        fi

}

killproc()
{

        if [ $# = 0 ]
        then
                echo "Usage: killproc {program} [signal]"
                exit 1
        fi

        base=`basename $1`

        if [ "$2" != "" ]
        then
```

```
        killlevel=$2
    else
        nolevel=1
    fi

    pidlist=`pidof -o $$ -o $PPID -o %PPID -x $base`

    pid=""

    for apid in $pidlist
    do
        if [ -d /proc/$apid ]
        then
            pid="$pid $apid"
        fi
    done

    if [ -n "$pid" ]
    then
        if [ "$nolevel" = 1 ]
        then
            kill -TERM $pid
            if ps h $pid >/dev/null 2>&1
            then
                kill -KILL $pid
            fi
            ps h $pid >/dev/null 2>&1
            if [ $? = 0 ]
            then
                print_status failure
            else
                rm -f /var/run/$base.pid
                print_status success
            fi
        else
            kill $killlevel $pid
            ps h $pid >/dev/null 2>&1
            if [ $? = 0 ]
            then
                print_status failure
            else
                rm -f /var/run/$base.pid
                print_status success
            fi
        fi
    else
        print_status failure
    fi
}

reloadproc()
```

```
{
        if [ $# = 0 ]
        then
                echo "Usage: reloadproc {program} [signal]"
                exit 1
        fi

        base=`basename $1`

        if [ −n "$2" ]
        then
                killlevel=$2
        else
                nolevel=1
        fi

        pidlist=`pidof −o $$ −o $PPID −o %PPID −x $base`

        pid=""

        for apid in $pidlist
        do
                if [ −d /proc/$apid ]
                then
                        pid="$pid $apid"
                fi
        done

        if [ −n "$pid" ]
        then
                if [ "$nolevel" = 1 ]
                then
                        kill −SIGHUP $pid
                        evaluate_retval
                else
                        kill $killlevel $pid
                        evaluate_retval
                fi
        else
                print_status failure
        fi
}

statusproc()
{
        if [ $# = 0 ]
        then
                echo "Usage: status {program}"
                return 1
        fi
```

```
        pid=`pidof -o $$ -o $PPID -o %PPID -x $1`
        if [ -n "$pid" ]
        then
                echo "$1 running with Process ID $pid"
                return 0
        fi

        if [ -f /var/run/$1.pid ]
        then
                pid=`head -1 /var/run/$1.pid`
                if [ -n "$pid" ]
                then
                        echo "$1 not running but /var/run/$1.pid exists"
                        return 1
                fi
        fi

}

# End /etc/init.d/functions
```

Creating the checkfs script

Create a new file `/etc/init.d/checkfs` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/checkfs

source /etc/init.d/functions

echo -n "Activating swap..."
/sbin/swapon -a
evaluate_retval

if [ -f /fastboot ]
then
        echo "Fast boot, no file system check"
else
        /bin/mount -n -o remount,ro /
        if [ $? = 0 ]
        then
                if [ -f /forcefsck ]
                then
                        echo -n "/forcefsck exists, forcing "
                        echo "file system check"
                        force="-f"
                else
                        force=""
                fi

                echo "Checking file systems..."
                /sbin/fsck $force -a -A -C -T

                if [ $? -gt 1 ]
                then
                        $FAILURE
                        echo
                        echo -n "fsck failed. Please repair your file "
                        echo "systems manually by running /sbin/fsck"
                        echo "without the -a option"
                        echo
                        echo -n "Please note that the root file system "
                        echo "is currently mounted in read-only mode."
                        echo
                        echo -n "I will start sulogin now. When you  "
                        echo "logout I will reboot your system."
                        echo
                        $NORMAL
                        /sbin/sulogin
```

```
                /sbin/reboot -f
            else
                print_status success
            fi

        else
            echo -n "Cannot check root file system because it "
            echo "could not be mounted in read-only mode."
        fi
fi

# End /etc/init.d/checkfs
```

Creating the halt script

Create a new file `/etc/init.d/halt` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/halt

/sbin/halt –d –f –i –p

# End /etc/init.d/halt
```

Creating the loadkeys script

You only need to create this script if you don't have a default 101 keys US keyboard layout. Create a new file `/etc/init.d/loadkeys` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/loadkeys

source /etc/init.d/functions

echo -n "Loading keymap..."
/usr/bin/loadkeys -d >/dev/null
evaluate_retval

# End /etc/init.d/loadkeys
```

Creating the mountfs script

Create a new file `/etc/init.d/mountfs` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/mountfs

source /etc/init.d/functions

echo -n "Remounting root file system in read-write mode..."
/bin/mount -n -o remount,rw /
evaluate_retval

echo > /etc/mtab
/bin/mount -f -o remount,rw /

/bin/rm -f /fastboot /forcefsck

echo -n "Mounting other file systems..."
/bin/mount -a
evaluate_retval

# End /etc/init.d/mountfs
```

Creating the reboot script

Create a new file /etc/init.d/reboot containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/reboot

echo "System reboot in progress..."

/sbin/reboot –d –f –i

# End /etc/init.d/reboot
```

Creating the sendsignals script

Create a new file `/etc/init.d/sendsignals` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/sendsignals

source /etc/init.d/functions

echo −n "Sending all processes the TERM signal..."
/sbin/killall5 −15
evaluate_retval

echo −n "Sending all processes the KILL signal..."
/sbin/killall5 −9
evaluate_retval

# End /etc/init.d/sendsignals
```

Creating the setclock script

The following script is only for real use when your hardware clock (also known as BIOS or CMOS clock) isn't set to GMT time. The recommended setup is setting your hardware clock to GMT and have the time converted to localtime using the /etc/localtime symbolic link. But if you run an OS that doesn't understand a clock set to GMT (most notable are Microsoft OS'es) you might want to set your clock to localtime so that the time is properly displayed on those OS'es. This script will reset the kernel time to the hardware clock without converting the time using the /etc/localtime symlink.

If you want to use this script on your system even if you have your hardware clock set to GMT, then change the UTC variable below to the value of *1*.

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/setclock

source /etc/init.d/functions
source /etc/sysconfig/clock

CLOCKPARAMS="--hctosys"

case "$UTC" in
        yes|true|1)
                CLOCKPARAMS="$CLOCKPARAMS -u"
                ;;
esac

echo -n "Setting clock..."
/sbin/hwclock $CLOCKPARAMS
evaluate_retval

# End /etc/init.d/setclock
```

Creating the /etc/sysconfig/clock file

Create a new file `/etc/sysconfig/clock` containing the following:

```
# Begin /etc/sysconfig/clock

UTC=1

# End /etc/sysconfig/clock
```

If your hardware clock (also known as BIOS or CMOS clock) is not set to GMT time, than set the UTC variable in the /etc/sysconfig/clock file to the value *0* (zero).

Creating the sysklogd script

Create a new file `/etc/init.d/sysklogd` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/sysklogd

source /etc/init.d/functions

case "$1" in
        start)
                echo -n "Starting system log daemon..."
                loadproc /usr/sbin/syslogd -m 0

                echo -n "Starting kernel log daemon..."
                loadproc /usr/sbin/klogd
                ;;

        stop)
                echo -n "Stopping kernel log daemon..."
                killproc klogd

                echo -n "Stopping system log daemon..."
                killproc syslogd
                ;;

        reload)
                echo -n "Reloading system log daemon configuration file..."
                reloadproc syslogd -1
                ;;

        restart)
                $0 stop
                sleep 1
                $0 start
                ;;

        status)
                statusproc /usr/sbin/syslogd
                statusproc /usr/sbin/klogd
                ;;

        *)
                echo "Usage: $0 {start|stop|reload|restart|status}"
                exit 1
        ;;

esac
```

```
# End /etc/init.d/sysklogd
```

Creating the umountfs script

Create a new file /etc/init.d/umountfs containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/umountfs

source /etc/init.d/functions

echo -n "Deactivating swap..."
/sbin/swapoff -a
evaluate_retval

echo -n "Unmounting file systems..."
/bin/umount -a -r
evaluate_retval

# End /etc/init.d/umountfs
```

Setting up symlinks and permissions

Give these files the proper permissions and create the necessary symlinks by running the following commands:

```
root:~#   cd /etc/init.d
root:init.d#   chmod 754 rc rcS functions checkfs halt
loadkeys mountfs
root:init.d#   chmod 754 reboot sendsignals setclock sysklogd
umountfs
root:init.d#   cd ../rc0.d
root:rc0.d#   ln -s ../init.d/sysklogd K90sysklogd
root:rc0.d#   ln -s ../init.d/sendsignals S80sendsignals
root:rc0.d#   ln -s ../init.d/umountfs S90umountfs
root:rc0.d#   ln -s ../init.d/halt S99halt
root:rc0.d#   cd ../rc6.d
root:rc6.d#   ln -s ../init.d/sysklogd K90sysklogd
root:rc6.d#   ln -s ../init.d/sendsignals S80sendsignals
root:rc6.d#   ln -s ../init.d/umountfs S90umountfs
root:rc6.d#   ln -s ../init.d/reboot S99reboot
root:rc6.d#   cd ../rcS.d
root:rcS.d#   ln -s ../init.d/checkfs S05checkfs
root:rcS.d#   ln -s ../init.d/mountfs S10mountfs
root:rcS.d#   ln -s ../init.d/setclock S20setclock
root:rcS.d#   ln -s ../init.d/loadkeys S30loadkeys
root:rcS.d#   cd ../rc1.d
root:rc1.d#   ln -s ../init.d/sysklogd K90sysklogd
root:rc1.d#   cd ../rc2.d
root:rc2.d#   ln -s ../init.d/sysklogd S03sysklogd
root:rc2.d#    cd ../rc3.d
root:rc3.d#    ln -s ../init.d/sysklogd S03sysklogd
root:rc3.d#    cd ../rc4.d
root:rc4.d#    ln -s ../init.d/sysklogd S03sysklogd
root:rc4.d#    cd ../rc5.d
root:rc5.d#    ln -s ../init.d/sysklogd S03sysklogd
```

Creating the /etc/fstab file

In order for certain programs to be able to determine where certain partitions are supposed to be mounted by default, the /etc/fstab file is used. Create a new file `/etc/fstab` containing the following:

```
# Begin /etc/fstab

/dev/<LFS−partition designation> / ext2 defaults 1 1
/dev/<swap−partition designation> none swap sw 0 0
proc /proc proc defaults 0 0

# End /etc/fstab
```

Replace <LFS−partition designation> and <swap−partition designation> with the appropriate devices (/dev/hda5 and /dev/hda6 in my case).

Chapter 7. Setting up basic networking

Introduction

This chapter will setup basic networking. Although you might not be connected to a network, Linux software uses network functions anyway. We'll be installing at least the local loopback device and a network card as well if applicable. Also the proper bootscripts will be created so that networking will be enabled during boot time.

Installing network software

Installing Netkit−base

Install Netkit−base by running the following commands:

```
root:netkit-base-0.17#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:netkit-base-0.17#   make
root:netkit-base-0.17#   make install
root:netkit-base-0.17#   cd etc.sample
root:etc.sample#   cp services protocols /etc
```

There are other files in the `etc.sample` directory which might be of interest to you.

Installing Net−tools

Edit the `Makefile` file and edit the CFLAGS variable if you want to add compiler optimzations.

Install Net−tools by running the following commands:

```
root:net-tools-1.57#   make
root:net-tools-1.57#   make install
```

You might have noticed that we don't use the compiler optimizations for this package. The reason is that overriding the CFLAGS variable causes compilation problems. You would have to edit the Makefile file and add the proper values to the CFLAGS variable and then compile the package. If you want to do that it's up to you. I don't think it's worth the trouble though. The programs in this package aren't that big that optimization would have any noticable effect on the performance.

Creating network boot scripts

Creating the /etc/init.d/localnet bootscript

Create a new file `/etc/init.d/localnet` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/localnet

source /etc/init.d/functions
source /etc/sysconfig/network

case "$1" in
        start)
                echo -n "Bringing up the loopback interface..."
                /sbin/ifconfig lo 127.0.0.1
                evaluate_retval

                echo -n "Setting up hostname..."
                /bin/hostname $HOSTNAME
                evaluate_retval
                ;;

        stop)
                echo -n "Bringing down the loopback interface..."
                /sbin/ifconfig lo down
                evaluate_retval
                ;;

        *)
                echo "Usage: $0: {start|stop}"
                exit 1
                ;;
esac

# End /etc/init.d/localnet
```

Setting up permissions and symlink

Set the proper file permissions and create the necessary symlink by running the following commands:

```
root:~# cd /etc/init.d
```

```
root:init.d#    chmod 754 /etc/init.d/localnet
root:init.d#    cd ../rcS.d
root:rcS.d#    ln -s ../init.d/localnet S03localnet
```

Creating the /etc/sysconfig/network file

Create a new file `/etc/sysconfig/network` and put the hostname in it by running:

```
root:~#   echo "HOSTNAME=lfs" > /etc/sysconfig/network
```

Replace "lfs" by the name you wish to call your computer. Please not that you should not enter the FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name) here. That information will be put in the `/etc/hosts` file later.

Creating the /etc/hosts file

If you want to configure a network card, you have to decide on the IP–address, FQDN and possible aliases for use in the /etc/hosts file. An example is:

```
<my-IP> myhost.mydomain.org aliases
```

Make sure the IP–address is in the private network IP–address range. Valid ranges are:

Class	Networks
A	10.0.0.0
B	172.16.0.0 through 172.31.0.0
C	192.168.0.0 through 192.168.255.0

A valid IP address could be 192.168.1.1. A valid FQDN for this IP could be www.linuxfromscratch.org

If you're not going to use a network card, you still need to come up with a FQDN. This is necessary for programs like Sendmail to operate correctly (in fact; Sendmail won't run when it can't determine the FQDN).

If you don't configure a network card, create a new file `/etc/hosts` containing:

```
# Begin /etc/hosts (no network card version)

127.0.0.1 www.mydomain.com <value of HOSTNAME> localhost

# End /etc/hosts (no network card version)
```

If you do configure a network card, create a new file `/etc/hosts` containing:

```
# Begin /etc/hosts (network card version)

127.0.0.1 localhost.localdomain localhost
192.168.1.1 www.mydomain.org <value of HOSTNAME>

# End /etc/hosts (network card version)
```

Of course, change the 192.168.1.1 and www.mydomain.org to your own liking (or requirements if you are assigned an IP−address by a network/system administrator and you plan on connecting this machine to that network).

Creating the /etc/init.d/ethnet script

This section only applies if you are going to configure a network card. If you're not, skip this section.

Create a new file `/etc/init.d/ethnet` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/ethnet

source /etc/init.d/functions
source /etc/sysconfig/network

case "$1" in
        start)
                echo −n "Bringing up the eth0 interface..."
        /sbin/ifconfig eth0 $IP broadcast $BROADCAST netmask $NETMASK
                evaluate_retval
                ;;

        stop)
                echo −n "Bringing down the eth0 interface..."
                /sbin/ifconfig eth0 down
```

```
            evaluate_retval
            ;;

        *)
            echo "Usage: $0 {start|stop}"
            exit 1
            ;;
esac

# End /etc/init.d/ethnet
```

Editing the /etc/sysconfig/network file

Edit the `/etc/sysconfig/network` file and add the following lines to it. Don't remove the HOSTNAME= line.

```
IP=192.168.1.1
NETMASK=255.255.255.0
BROADCAST=192.168.1.255
```

Chagne the IP, NETMASK and BROADCAST values to match your network setup.

Setting up permissions and symlink

Set the proper file permissions and create the necessary symlink by running the following commands:

```
root:~#     cd /etc/init.d
root:init.d#    chmod 754 /etc/init.d/ethnet
root:init.d#   cd ../rc1.d
root:rc1.d#   ln -s ../init.d/ethnet K90ethnet
root:rc1.d#   cd ../rc2.d
root:rc2.d#   ln -s ../init.d/ethnet K90ethnet
root:rc2.d#    cd ../rc3.d
root:rc3.d#    ln -s ../init.d/ethnet S10ethnet
root:rc3.d#    cd ../rc4.d
root:rc4.d#    ln -s ../init.d/ethnet S10ethnet
root:rc4.d#    cd ../rc5.d
root:rc5.d#    ln -s ../init.d/ethnet S10ethnet
```

Chapter 8. Making the LFS system bootable

Introduction

This chapter will make LFS bootable. This chapter deals with building a new kernel for our new LFS system and adding the proper entries to LILO so that you can select to boot the LFS system at the LILO: prompt.

Installing a kernel

A kernel is the heart of a Linux system. We could use the kernel image from our normal system, but we might as well compile a new kernel from the most recent kernel sources available.

Building the kernel involves a few steps: configuring it and compiling it. There are a few ways to configure the kernel. If you don't like the way this book does it, read the `README` file and find out what your other options are. Run the following commands to build the kernel:

```
root:linux#   make mrproper
root:linux#    make menuconfig
root:linux#    make dep
root:linux#    make bzImage
root:linux#   make modules
root:linux#   make modules_install
root:linux#    cp arch/i386/boot/bzImage /boot/lfskernel
root:linux#   cp System.map /boot
```

Adding an entry to LILO

In order to being able to boot from this partition, we need to update our /etc/lilo.conf file. Add the following lines to lilo.conf:

```
image=/boot/lfskernel
        label=lfs
        root=<partition>
        read−only
```

<partition> must be replaced by your partition's designation (which would be /dev/hda5 in my case).

Now update the boot loader by running:

```
root:~# lilo
```

Testing the system

Now that all software has been installed, bootscripts have been created and the local network is setup, it's time for you to reboot your computer and test these new scripts to verify that they actually work. You first want to execute them manually from the /etc/init.d directory so you can fix the most obvious problems (typos, wrong paths and such). When those scripts seem to work just fine manually they should also work during a system start or shutdown. There's only one way to test that. Shutdown your system with shutdown –r now and reboot into LFS. After the reboot you will have a normal login prompt like you have on your normal Linux system (unless you use XDM or some sort of other Display Manger (like KDM – KDE's version of XDM).

III. Part III – Installing LFS on Apple PowerPC systems

Table of Contents

9. Packages you need to download
10. Preparing a new partition
11. Installing basic system software
12. Creating system boot scripts
13. Setting up basic networking
14. Making the LFS system bootable

Chapter 9. Packages you need to download

Below is a list of all the packages you need to download for building the basic system. The version numbers printed correspond to versions of the software that is known to work and which this book is based on. If you experience problems which you can't solve yourself, download the version that is assumed in this book (in case you download a newer version).

The listed file sizes refer to the sizes of the .tar.gz archives. Sometimes you can find .tar.bz2 archives, but as .tar.gz is still the most widely used format, that size is listed.

- Bash (2.04) − 1,668 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/bash/
- Binutils (2.10) 7,041 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/binutils/
- Bzip2 (1.0.1) 460 KB: http://sourceware.cygnus.com/bzip2/
- Diff Utils (2.7) 304 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/diffutils/
- File Utils (4.0) 1,143 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/fileutils/
- GCC (2.95.2) 12,583 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gcc/
- Linux Kernel (2.2.16) 16,705 KB: ftp://ftp.kernel.org/pub/linux/kernel/
- Kernel USB patch: http://216.22.163.20/usb−2.3.50−1−for−2.2.14.diff.gz
- Glibc (2.1.3) 8,802 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/glibc/
- Glibc−crypt (2.1.3) 39 KB: ftp://ftp.gwdg.de/pub/linux/glibc/
- Glibc−linuxthreads (2.1.3) 149 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/glibc/
- Glibc Patch (2.1.3) − 1 KB: http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/download/glibc−2.1.3.patch.gz
- Glibc−ctype−patch: ftp://216.22.163.20/glibc−2.1.3−ctype.patch
-

Grep (2.4.2) 449 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/grep/

- Gzip (1.2.4a) 215 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gzip/
- Make (3.79.1) 1,006 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/make/
- Sed (3.02) 258 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/sed/
- Shell Utils (2.0) 1,214 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/sh−utils/
- Tar (1.13) 1.058,280 bytes: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/tar/
- Text Utils (2.0) 1,496 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/textutils/
- MAKEDEV (2.5) − 11 KB: ftp://ftp.ihg.uni−duisburg.de/Linux/system
- Bison (1.28) 410 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/bison/
- Mawk (1.3.3) : ftp://ftp.whidbey.net/pub/brennan/
- Patch (2.5.4) 182 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/patch/
- Find Utils (4.1) 287 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/findutils/
- Find Utils Patch (4.1) 1 KB: http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/download/findutils−4.1.patch.gz
- Ncurses (4.2) 1,219 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/ncurses/ (newer versions than 4.2 are known not to work on PPC)
- Less (358) 225 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/less/
- Groff (1.16) 1,393 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/groff/
- Man (1.5h1) 179,170 bytes: ftp://ftp.win.tue.nl/pub/linux−local/utils/man/
-

Perl (5.6.0) 5,316 KB: http://www.perl.com

- M4 (1.4) 310 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/m4/
- Texinfo (4.0) 1,106 kB ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/texinfo/
- Autoconf (2.13) 433 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/autoconf/
- Automake (1.4) 344 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/automake/
- Flex (2.5.4a) 372 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/non−gnu/flex/
- File (3.31) 135 KB: ftp://ftp.gw.com/mirrors/pub/unix/file/
- Libtool (1.3.5) 526 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/libtool/
- Bin86 (0.15.1) 138 KB: http://www.cix.co.uk/~mayday/
- Gettext (0.10.35) 696 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gettext/
- Console−tools (0.2.3) 652 KB: ftp://metalab.unc.edu/pub/Linux/system/keyboards/
- Console−tools (0.2.3) Patch: 4 KB: http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/download/console−tools−0.2.3.patch.gz
- Console−data (1999.08.29) 534 KB: ftp://metalab.unc.edu/pub/Linux/system/keyboards/
- E2fsprogs (1.19) 935 KB: http://e2fsprogs.sourceforge.net
- Ed (0.2) 181 KB: ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/ed/
- Ld.so (1.9.9) 346 KB: http://www.bcpub.com/ld.so−1.9.9.tar.gz
- Modutils (2.3.13) 197 KB: ftp://ftp.ocs.com.au/pub/modutils/
-

Modutils (2.3.13) 197 KB: ftp://ftp.ocs.com.au/pub/modutils/

- Procinfo (17) 22 KB: ftp://ftp.cistron.nl/pub/people/svm/
- Procps (2.0.7) 191 KB: ftp://people.redhat.com/johnsonm/procps/
- Psmisc (19) 21 KB: ftp://lrcftp.epfl.ch/pub/linux/local/psmisc/
- Shadow Password Suite (19990827) 706 KB: ftp://ftp.ists.pwr.wroc.pl/pub/linux/shadow/
- Vim−rt (5.7) 1,073 KB: ftp://ftp.vim.org/pub/editors/vim/unix/
- Vim−src (5.7) 1,202 KB: ftp://ftp.vim.org/pub/editors/vim/unix/
- Sysklogd (1.3.31) 93 KB: ftp://sunsite.unc.edu/pub/Linux/system/daemons/
- Sysvinit (2.78) 106 KB: ftp://ftp.cistron.nl/pub/people/miquels/sysvinit/
- Util Linux (2.10m) 1,178 KB: ftp://ftp.win.tue.nl/pub/linux/utils/util−linux/
- Pmac Utils((1.1.1): ftp://216.22.163.20/pmac−utils−1.1.1−patched.tar.gz
- Man−pages (1.30) 667,665 bytes: ftp://ftp.win.tue.nl/pub/linux/docs/manpages/
- Netkit−base (0.17) 55 KB: ftp://ftp.uk.linux.org/pub/linux/Networking/netkit/
- Net−tools (1.57) 254 KB: http://www.bcpub.com/net−tools−1.57.tar.gz

Chapter 10. Preparing a new partition

Introduction

In this chapter the partition that is going to host the LFS system is going to be prepared. A new partition will be created, an ext2 file system will be created on it and the directory structure will be created. When this is done, we can move on to the next chapter and start building a new Linux system from scratch.

Creating a new partition

Before we can build our new Linux system, we need to have an empty Linux partition on which we can build our new system. I recommend a partition size of at least 750 MB. This gives you enough space to store all the tarballs and to compile all packages without worrying running out of the necessary temporary disk space. If you already have a Linux Native partition available, you can skip this subsection.

Start the pdisk program (or some other fdisk program you prefer) with the appropriate hard disk as the option (like /dev/shda if you want to create a new partition on the first SCSI disk). The partition that is available for partitioning is called *Apple_Free_Space*. To create a linux capable partition in that free space, type c followed by the partition designation of the free space p<n>, the size in MB of the desired partition <size>M and the name of the partition <name>. The example below creates a 1.8 GB partition name root starting at the beginning of the free space designated as partition 6: *c p6 1800M root*

Mounting the new partition

Now that we have created the ext2 file system, it is ready for use. All we have to do to be able to access it (as in reading from and writing date to it) is mounting it. If you mount it under /mnt/lfs, you can access this partition by going to the /mnt/lfs directory and then do whatever you need to do. This document will assume that you have mounted the partition on a subdirectory under /mnt. It doesn't matter which directory you choose (or you can use just the /mnt directory as the mount point) but this book will assume /mnt/lfs in the commands it tells you to execute.

Create the /mnt/lfs directory by runnning:

```
root:~#   mkdir -p /mnt/lfs
```

Now mount the LFS partition by running:

```
root:~#   mount /dev/xxx /mnt/lfs
```

Replace "xxx" by your partition's designation.

This directory (/mnt/lfs) is the $LFS variable you have read about earlier. So if you read somewhere to "cp inittab $LFS/etc" you actually will type "cp inittab /mnt/lfs/etc".

Creating directories

Let's create the directory tree on the LFS partition according to the FHS standard which can be found at http://www.pathname.com/fhs/. Issuing the following commands will create the necessary directories:

```
root:~#   cd $LFS
root:~#   mkdir bin boot dev etc home lib mnt proc root sbin
tmp  var
root:~#   for dirname in $LFS/usr $LFS/usr/local
> do
> mkdir $dirname
> cd $dirname
> mkdir bin etc include lib sbin share  src tmp var
> ln -s share/man man
> ln -s share/doc doc
> ln -s share/info info
> cd $dirname/share
> mkdir dict doc info locale man nls misc  terminfo zoneinfo
> cd $dirname/share/man
> mkdir man1 man2 man3 man4 man5 man6 man7  man8
> done
root:~#   cd $LFS/var
root:var#   mkdir lock log run spool tmp
```

Normally directories are created with permission mode 755, which isn't desired for all directories. I haven't checked the FHS if they suggest default modes for certain directories, so I'll just change the modes for two directories. The first change is a mode 0750 for the $LFS/root directory. This is to make sure that not just everybody can enter the /root directory (the same you would do with /home/username directories). The second change is a mode 1777 for the $LFS/tmp directory. This way every user can write stuff to the /tmp directory if they need to. The sticky (1) bit makes sure users can't delete other user's file which they normally can do because the directory is set in such a way that every body (owner, group, world) can write to that directory.

```
root:~#   cd $LFS
root:lfs#   chmod 0750 root
root:lfs#   chmod 0555 proc
root:lfs#   chmod 1777 tmp usr/tmp var/tmp
```

Now that the directories are created, copy the source files you have downloaded in chapter 3 to some subdirectory under $LFS/usr/src (you will need to create this subdirectory yourself).

Chapter 11. Installing basic system software

How and why things are done

In this chapter we will install all the software that belongs to a basic Linux system. After you're done with this chapter you have a fully working Linux system. The remaining chapters deal with setting up networking, creating the boot scripts and adding an entry to lilo.conf so that you can boot your LFS system.

This chapter is devided in two chunks. The first part installs a few necessary programs on the LFS system. These programs are needed to install the rest of the programs that belong to a basic system. When the first part is done, we will enter a chroot'ed environment. This means that we start a shell with $LFS as the root directory (instead of the usual / directory as the root directory). This has the same effect as rebooting the computer into the LFS system, but this way we don't have to reboot. If something goes wrong, you don't need to reboot back in the normal Linux system to fix whatever you need to fix. You just open a new shell on a virtual console, or start a new xterm and you can do what you need to do.

The software in the first part will be linked statically. These programs will be re−installed in the second part and linked dynamically. The reason for the static version first is that there is a chance that our normal Linux system and your LFS system aren't using the same C Library versions. If the programs in the first part are linked against an older C library version, those program might not work well on the LFS system.

The key to learn what makes Linux tick is to know exactly what packages are used for and why you or the system needs them. In depth descriptions of the package are provided in Appendix A.

Debugging symbols and compiler optimizations

Most programs and libraries by default are compiled with debugging symbols and optimizing level 2 (gcc options −g and −O2) and are compiled for a specific CPU. On Intel platforms software is compiled for i386 processors by default. If you don't wish to run software on other machines other than your own, you might want to change the default compiler options so that they will be compiled with a higher optimization level, no debugging symbols and generate code for your specific architecture. Let me first explain what debugging symbols are.

A program compiled with debugging symbols means you can run a program or library through a debugger and the debugger's output will be user friendlier. These debugging symbols also enlarge the program or library significantly.

To remove debugging symbols from a binary (must be an a.out or ELF binary) run **`strip --strip-debug filename`** You can use wild cards if you need to strip debugging symbols from multiple files (use something like strip −−strip−debug $LFS/usr/bin/*). Another, easier, options is just not to compile programs with debugging symbols. Most people will probably never use a debugger on software, so by leaving those symbols out you can save a lot of diskspace.

Before you wonder if these debugging symbols would make a big difference, here are some statistics:

- A static Bash binary with debugging symbols: 2.3MB
- A static Bash binary without debugging symbols: 645KB
- A dynamic Bash binary with debugging symbols: 1.2MB
- A dynamic Bash binary without debugging symbols: 478KB
- $LFS/lib and $LFS/usr/lib (glibc and gcc files) with debugging symbols: 87MB
- $LFS/lib and $LFS/usr/lib (glibc and gcc files) without debugging symbols: 16MB

Sizes may vary depending on which compiler was used and which C library version was used to link dynamic programs against, but your results will be similar if you compare programs with and without debugging symbols. After I was done with this chapter and stripped all debugging symbols from all LFS binaries and libraries I regained a little over 102 MB of disk space. Quite the difference.

There are a few ways to change the default compiler options. One way is to edit every Makefile file you can find in a package, look for the CFLAGS and CXXFLAGS variables (a well designed package uses the CFLAGS variable to define gcc compiler options and CXXFLAGS to define g++ compiler options) and change their values. Packages like binutils, gcc, glibc and others have a lot of Makefile files in a lot of subdirectories so this would take a lot of time to do. Instead there's an easier way to do things: create the CFLAGS and CXXFLAGS environment variables. Most configure scripts read the CFLAGS and

CXXFLAGS variables and use them in the Makefile files. A few packages don't follow this convention and those package require manual editing.

The optimization options presented here are a minimal set of optimizations. This is to ensure that it will work on most platforms. Run the following command in the shell that you are going to use to compile the software in. If you exit the shell to, for example, pause compilation and continue later, make sure you execute the following commands again when you start compiling again (you only need to execute it once when you open a new virtual console, xterm, Eterm or some other terminal emulation program). Or you can insert these commands into your `/etc/profile`, `$HOME/.bashrc` or similar files. Run the following commands to setup the environment variables:

```
root:~#    export CFLAGS="-O3 -mcpu=xxx -march=yyy"
root:~#    export CXXFLAGS="-O3 -mcpu=xxx -march=yyy"
```

Replace xxx and yyy with the appropriate cpu idenfifiers such as i686. More information on what values these variables can have can be found in the GCC info page.

Please keep in mind that if you find that a package doesn't compile and gives errors like "segmentation fault, core dumped" it's most likely got to do with these compiler optimizations. Try lowering the optimizing level by changing −O3 to −O2. If that doesn't work try −O or leave it out all together. Also try changing the −mcpu and −march variables. Compilers are very sensitive to certain hardware too. Bad memory can cause compilation problems when a high level of optimization is used, like the −O3 setting. The fact that I don't have any problems compiling everything with −O3 doesn't mean you won't have any problems either. Another problem can be the Binutils version that's installed on your system which often causes compilation problems in Glibc (most noticable in RedHat because RedHat often uses beta software which aren't always very stable. "RedHat likes living on the bleeding edge, but leaves the bleeding up to you" (quoted from somebody on the lfs−discuss mailinglist).

Preparing the LFS system

We're about to start with installing the first set of packages. These packages will be, as previously explained, linked statically.

Before we start, make sure you have the CFLAGS and CXXFLAGS environment variables setup if you plan on using compiler optimizations.

Installing Bash

Installation of Bash

Install Bash by running the following commands:

```
root:bash-2.04#   ./configure --enable-static-link \
> --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:bash-2.04#   make
root:bash-2.04#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
root:bash-2.04#   mv $LFS/usr/bin/bash \
> $LFS/usr/bin/bashbug $LFS/bin
root:bash-2.04#   cd $LFS/bin
root:bin#   ln -s bash sh
```

Contents

The Bash package contains the bash program

Description

Bash is the Bourne−Again SHell, which is a widely used command interpreter on Unix systems. Bash is a program that reads from standard input, the keyboard. You type something and the program will evaluate what you have typed and do something with it, like running a program.

Installing Binutils

Installation of Binutils

Install Binutils by running the following commands:

```
root:binutils-2.10#   ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:binutils-2.10#   make -e LDFLAGS=-all-static tooldir=/usr
root:binutils-2.10#  make -e prefix=$LFS/usr \
> tooldir=$LFS/usr install
```

Description

The Binutils package contains the ld, as, ar, nm, objcopy, objdump, ranlib, size, strings, strip, c++filt, addr2line and nlmconv programs

---

Description

ld

ld combines a number of object and archive files, relocates their data and ties up symbol references. Often the last step in building a new compiled program to run is a call to ld.

---

as

as is primarily intended to assemble the output of the GNU C compiler gcc for use by the linker ld.

---

ar

The ar program creates, modifies, and extracts from archives. An archive is a single file holding a collection of other files in a structure that makes it possible to retrieve the original individual files (called members of the archive).

---

nm

nm lists the symbols from object files.

---

objcopy

objcopy utility copies the contents of an object file to another. objcopy uses the GNU BFD Library to read and write the object files. It can write the destination object file in a format different from that of the source object file.

---

objdump

objdump displays information about one or more object files. The options control what particular information to display. This information is mostly useful to programmers who are working on the compilation tools, as opposed to programmers who just want their program to compile and work.

---

ranlib

ranlib generates an index to the contents of an archive, and stores it in the archive. The index lists each symbol defined by a member of an archive that is a relocatable object file.

---

size

size lists the section sizes −−and the total size−− for each of the object files objfile in its argument list. By default, one line of output is generated for each object file or each module in an archive.

---

strings

For each file given, strings prints the printable character sequences that are at least 4 characters long (or the number specified with an option to the program) and are followed by an unprintable character. By default, it only prints the strings from the initialized and loaded sections of object files; for other types of files, it prints the strings from the whole file.

strings is mainly useful for determining the contents of non−text files.

---

strip

strip discards all or specific symbols from object files. The list of object files may include archives. At least one object file must be given. strip modifies the files named in its argument, rather than writing modified copies under different names.

---

c++filt

The C++ language provides function overloading, which means that you can write many functions with the same name (providing each takes parameters of different types). All C++ function names are encoded into a low−level assembly label (this process is known as mangling). The c++filt program does the inverse

mapping: it decodes (demangles) low−level names into user−level names so that the linker can keep these overloaded functions from clashing.

---

addr2line

addr2line translates program addresses into file names and line numbers. Given an address and an executable, it uses the debugging information in the executable to figure out which file name and line number are associated with a given address.

---

nlmconv

nlmconv converts relocatable object files into the NetWare Loadable Module files, optionally reading header files for NLM header information.

Installing Bzip2

Installation of Bzip2

Install Bzip2 by running the following commands:

```
root:bzip2-1.0.0#   sed \
> s/"\$(CC) \$(CFLAGS) -o"/"\$(CC) \$(CFLAGS)  \$(LDFLAGS)
-o"/ \
> Makefile | make -f /dev/stdin  LDFLAGS=-static
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   make PREFIX=$LFS/usr install
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   cd $LFS/usr/bin
root:bin#   mv bzcat bunzip2 bzip2 bzip2recover $LFS/bin
```

Contents

The Bzip2 packages contains the bzip2, bunzip2, bzcat and bzip2recover programs.

Description

Bzip2

bzip2 compresses files using the Burrows−Wheeler block sorting text compression algorithm, and Huffman coding. Compression is generally considerably better than that achieved by more conventional LZ77/LZ78−based compressors, and approaches the performance of the PPM family of statistical compressors.

Bunzip2

Bunzip2 decompresses files that are compressed with bzip2.

bzcat

bzcat (or bzip2 −dc) decompresses all specified files to the standard output.

bzip2recover

bzip2recover recovers data from damaged bzip2 files.

Installing Diffutils

Installation of Diffutils

Install Diffutils by running the following commands:

```
root:diffutils-2.7#
CPPFLAGS=-Dre_max_failures=re_max_failures2 \
> ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:diffutils-2.7#   make LDFLAGS=-static
root:diffutils-2.7#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
```

Contents

The Diffutils packagec contains the cmp, diff, diff3 and sdiff programs.

Description

cmp and diff

cmp and diff both compare two files and report their differences. Both programs have extra options which compare files in different situations.

diff3

The difference between diff and diff3 is that diff comprares 2 files, diff3 compares 3 files.

sdiff

sdiff merges two two files and interactively outputs the results.

Installing Fileutils

Installation of Fileutils

Install Fileutils by running the following commands:

```
root:fileutils-4.0#   ./configure --disable-nls --prefix=/usr
root:fileutils-4.0#   make LDFLAGS=-static
root:fileutils-4.0#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
root:fileutils-4.0#   cd $LFS/usr/bin
root:bin#   mv chgrp chmod chown cp dd df dir $LFS/bin
root:bin#   mv dircolors du install ln ls mkdir mkfifo
$LFS/bin
root:bin#   mv mknod mv rm rmdir sync touch vdir $LFS/bin
root:bin#   ln -s ../../bin/install install
```

Contents

The Fileutils package contains the chgrp, chmod, chown, cp, dd, df, dir, dircolors, du, install, ln, ls, mkdir, mkfifo, mknod, mv, rm, rmdir, sync, touch and vdir programs.

Description

chgrp

chgrp changes the group ownership of each given file to the named group, which can be either a group name or a numeric group ID.

---

chmod

chmod changes the permissions of each given file according to mode, which can be either a symbolic representation of changes to make, or an octal number representing the bit pattern for the new permissions.

---

chown

chown changes the user and/or group ownership of each given file.

---

cp

cp copies files from one place to another.

---

dd

dd copies a file (from the standard input to the standard output, by default) with a user–selectable blocksize, while optionally performing conversions on it.

---

df

df displays the amount of disk space available on the filesystem containing each file name argument. If no file name is given, the space available on all currently mounted filesystems is shown.

---

ls, dir and vdir

dir and vdir are versions of ls with different default output formats. These programs list each given file or directory name. Directory contents are sorted alphabetically. For ls, files are by default listed in columns, sorted vertically, if the standard output is a terminal; otherwise they are listed one per line. For dir, files are by default listed in columns, sorted vertically. For vdir, files are by default listed in long format.

---

dircolors

dircolors outputs commands to set the LS_COLOR environment variable. The LS_COLOR variable is use to change the default color scheme used by ls and related utilities.

---

du

du displays the amount of disk space used by each argument and for each subdirectory of directory arguments.

---

install

install copies files and sets their permission modes and, if possible, their owner and group.

---

ln

ln makes hard or soft (symbolic) links between files.

---

mkdir

mkdir creates directories with a given name.

---

mkfifo

mkfifo creates a FIFO with each given name.

---

mknod

mknod creates a FIFO, character special file, or block special file with the given file name.

---

mv

mv moves files from one directory to another or renames files, depending on the arguments given to mv.

---

rm

rm removes files or directories.

---

rmdir

rmdir removes directories, if they are empty.

---

sync

sync forces changed blocks to disk and updates the super block.

---

touch

touch changes the access and modification times of each given file to the current time. Files that do not exist are created empty.

Installing GCC on the normal system if necessary

Installation of GCC on the normal system if necessary

In order to compile Glibc−2.1.3 later on you need to have gcc−2.95.2 installed. Although any GCC version above 2.8 would do, 2.95.2 is the highly recommended version to use. egcs−2.91.x is also known to work. If you don't have gcc−2.95.x or egcs−2.91.x you need to install gcc−2.95.2 on your normal sytem before you can compile Glibc later in this chapter.

To find out which compiler version your systems has, run the following command:

```
root:~#   gcc --version
```

If you normal Linux system does not have gcc−2.95.x or egcs−2.91.x installed you need to install it now. We won't replace the current compiler on your system, but instead we will install gcc in a separate directory (/usr/local/gcc2952). This way no binaries or header files will be replaced.

After you unpacked the gcc−2.95.2 archive don't enter the newly created gcc−2.95.2 directory but stay in the $LFS/usr/src directory. Install GCC by running the following commands:

```
root:src#   mkdir $LFS/usr/src/gcc-build
root:src#   cd $LFS/usr/src/gcc-build
root:gcc-build#   ../gcc-2.95.2/configure \
> --prefix=/usr/local/gcc2952 \
> --with-local-prefix=/usr/local/gcc2952  \
> --with-gxx-include-dir=/usr/local/gcc2952/include/g++  \
> --enable-shared --enable-languages=c,c++
root:gcc-build#   make bootstrap
root:gcc-build#   make install
```

Contents

The GCC package contains compilers, preprocessors and the GNU C++ Library.

Description

Compiler

A compiler translates source code in text format to a format that a computer understands. After a source code file is compiled into an object file, a linker will create an executable file from one or more of these compiler generated object files.

Pre−processor

A pre−processor pre−processes a source file, such as including the contents of header files into the source file. You generally don't do this yourself to save yourself a lot of time. You just insert a line like #include <filename>. The pre−processor file insert the contents of that file into the source file. That's one of the things a pre−processor does.

C++ Library

The C++ library is used by C++ programs. The C++ library contains functions that are frequently used in C++ programs. This way the programmer doesn't have to write certain functions (such as writing a string of text to the screen) from scratch every time he creates a program.

Installing GCC on the LFS system

Installation of GCC on the LFS system

After you unpacked the gcc−2.95.2 archive don't enter the newly created gcc−2.95.2 directory but stay in the $LFS/usr/src directory. Install GCC by running the following commands:

```
root:src#   mkdir $LFS/usr/src/gcc-build
root:src#   cd $LFS/usr/src/gcc-build
root:gcc-build#   ../gcc-2.95.2/configure --prefix=/usr \
> --with-gxx-include-dir=/usr/include/g++ \
> --enable-languages=c,c++ --disable-nls
root:gcc-build#   make -e LDFLAGS=-static bootstrap
root:gcc-build#   make prefix=$LFS/usr
local_prefix=$LFS/usr/local \
> gxx_include_dir=$LFS/usr/include/g++ install
```

Creating necessary symlinks

The system needs a few symlinks to ensure every program is able to find the compiler and the pre−processor. Some programs run the cc program, others run the gcc program. Some programs expect the cpp program in /lib and others expect to find it in /usr/bin. Create those symlinks by running:

```
root:~#   cd $LFS/lib
root:lib#   ln -s ../usr/lib/gcc-lib/<host>/2.95.2/cpp cpp
root:lib#   cd $LFS/usr/lib
root:lib#   ln -s gcc-lib/<host>/2.95.2/cpp cpp
root:lib#   cd $LFS/usr/bin
root:bin#   ln -s gcc cc
```

Replace <host> with the directory where the gcc−2.95.2 files are installed (which is i686−unknown−linux in my case).

Contents

The GCC package contains compilers, preprocessors and the GNU C++ Library.

Description

Compiler

A compiler translates source code in text format to a format that a computer understands. After a source code file is compiled into an object file, a linker will create an executable file from one or more of these compiler generated object files.

Pre−processor

A pre−processor pre−processes a source file, such as including the contents of header files into the source file. You generally don't do this yourself to save yourself a lot of time. You just insert a line like #include <filename>. The pre−processor file insert the contents of that file into the source file. That's one of the things a pre−processor does.

C++ Library

The C++ library is used by C++ programs. The C++ library contains functions that are frequently used in C++ programs. This way the programmer doesn't have to write certain functions (such as writing a string of text to the screen) from scratch every time he creates a program.

Installing Linux Kernel

Installation of Linux Kernel

We won't be compiling a new kernel image yet. We'll do that after we have finished the installation of the basic system software in this chapter. But because certain software need the kernel header files, we're going to unpack the kernel archive now and set it up so that we can compile package that need the kernel.

Create the kernel configuration file by running the following command:

```
root:linux#   yes "" | make config
```

Ignore the warning *Broken pipe* you might see at the end. Now run the following commands to set up all the dependencies correctly:

```
root:linux#   make dep
```

Now that that's done, we need to create the `$LFS/usr/include/linux` and the `$LFS/usr/include/asm` symlinks. Create them by running the following commands:

```
root:~#   cd $LFS/usr/include
root:include#   ln -s ../src/linux/include/linux linux
root:include#   ln -s ../src/linux/include/asm asm
```

Contents

The Linux kernel package contains the Linux kernel.

Description

The Linux kernel is at the core of every Linux system. It's what makes Linux tick. When you turn on your computer and boot a Linux system, the very first piece of Linux software that gets loaded is the kernel. The kernel initializes the system's hardware components such as serial ports, parallel ports, sound cards, network cards, IDE controllers, SCSI controllers and a lot more. In a nutshell the kernel makes the hardware available so that the software can run.

Installing Glibc

Contents

The Glibc package contains the GNU C Library.

Description

The C Library is a collection of commonly used functions in programs. This way a programmer doens't need to create his own functions for every single task. The most common things like writing a string to your screen are already present and at the disposal of the programmer.

The C library (actually almost every library) come in two flavours: dynamic ones and static ones. In short when a program uses a static C library, the code from the C library will be copied into the executable file. When a program uses a dynamic library, that executable will not contain the code from the C library, but instead a routine that loads the functions from the library at the time the program is run. This means a significant decrease in the file size of a program. If you don't understand this concept, you better read the documentation that comes with the C Library as it is too complicated to explain here in one or two lines.

A note on the glibc−crypt package

An excerpt from the README file that is distributed with the glibc−crypt package:

The add−on is not included in the main distribution of the GNU C library because some governments, most notably those of France, Russia, and the US, have very restrictive rules governing the distribution and use of encryption software. Please read the node "Legal Problems" in the manual for more details.

In particular, the US does not allow export of this software without a licence, including via the Internet. So please do not download it from the main FSF FTP site at ftp.gnu.org if you are outside the US. This software was completely developed outside the US.

"This software" refers to the glibc−crypt package at ftp://ftp.gwdg.de/pub/linux/glibc/. This law only affects people who don't live in the US. It's not prohibited to import DES software, so if you live in the US you can import the file safely from Germany without breaking cryptographic laws. This law is changing lately and I don't know what the status of it is at the moment. Better be safe than sory.

Installation of Glibc

Copy the Glibc−crypt and Glibc−linuxthreads archives into the unpacked glibc directory. Copy the glibc−2.1.3−ctype.patch file to $LFS/usr/src

Unpack the glibc−crypt and glibc−linuxthreads archives there, but don't enter the created directories. Just unpack and leave it with that.

A few default parameters of Glibc need to be changed, such as the directory where the shared libraries are supposed to be installed in and the directory that contains the system configuration files. For this purpose you need to create the `$LFS/usr/src/glibc-build` directory and in that directory you create a new file `configparms` containing:

```
# Begin configparms

slibdir=/lib
sysconfdir=/etc

# End configparms
```

Change to the `$LFS/usr/src/glibc-2.1.3` directory and install Glibc by running the following commands if your system already had a suitable GCC version installed:

```
root:glibc-2.1.3#   patch -p1 < ../glibc-2.1.3-ctype.patch
root:glibc-2.1.3#   cd ../glibc-build
root:glibc-build#   ../glibc-2.1.3/configure --prefix=/usr
--enable-add-ons \
> --with-headers=$LFS/usr/include
root:glibc-build#   make
root:glibc-build#   make install_root=$LFS install
```

If you're getting errors related to illegal character 45 in some variable name during the compilation, apply the Glibc patch.

Install this patch by running the following command:

```
root:glibc-build#    patch -Np1 -i ../glibc-2.1.3.patch
```

Change to the `$LFS/usr/src/glibc-build` directory and install Glibc by running the following command if your system did not already have a suitable GCC version installed and you just installed GCC–2.95.2 on your normal Linux system a little while ago:

```
root:glibc-2.1.3#   patch -p1 < ../glibc-2.1.3-ctype.patch
root:glibc-2.1.3#   cd ../glibc-build
```

```
root:glibc-build#   CC=/usr/local/gcc2952/bin/gcc \
> ../glibc-2.1.3/configure --prefix=/usr  --enable-add-ons \
> --with-headers=$LFS/usr/include
root:glibc-build#   make
root:glibc-build#   make install_root=$LFS install
```

If you're getting errors related to illegal character 45 in some variable name during the compilation, appy the Glibc patch.

Install this patch by running the following command:

```
root:glibc-build#    patch -Np1 -i ../glibc-2.1.3.patch
```

Copying old NSS library files

If your normal Linux system runs glibc–2.0, you need to copy the NSS library files to the LFS partition. Certain statically linked programs still depend on the NSS library, especially programs that need to lookup usernames,userid's and groupid's. You can check which C library version your normal Linux system uses by running:

```
root:~# ls /lib/libc*
```

Your system uses glib–2.0 if there is a file that looks like *libc−2.0.7.so*

Your system uses glibc–2.1 if there is a file that looks like *libc−2.1.3.so*

Of course, the micro version number can be different (you could have libc–2.1.2 or libc–2.1.1 for example).

If you have a libc–2.0.x file copy the NSS library files by running:

```
root:~# cp -av /lib/libnss*  $LFS/lib
```

There are a few distributions that don't have files from which you can see which version of the C Library it is. If that's the case, it will be hard to determine which C library version you exactly have. Try to obtain this information using your distribution's installation tool. It often says which version it has available. If you can't figure out at all which C Library version is used, then copy the NSS files anyway and hope for the best.

That's the best advise I can give I'm afraid.

Installing Grep

Installation of Grep

Install Grep by running the following commands:

```
root:grep-2.4.2#
CPPFLAGS=-Dre_max_failures=re_max_failures2 \
> ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:grep-2.4.2#   make LDFLAGS=-static
root:grep-2.4.2#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
```

Contents

The grep package contains the egrep, fgrep and grep programs.

Description

egrep

egrep prints lines from files matching an extended regular expression pattern.

fgrep

fgrep prints lines from files matching a list of fixed strings, separated by newlines, any of which is to be matched.

grep

grep prints lines from files matching a basic regular expression pattern.

Installing Gzip

Installation of Gzip

Install Gzip by running the following commands:

```
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   make LDFLAGS=-static
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   cp $LFS/usr/bin/gunzip $LFS/usr/bin/gzip
$LFS/bin
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   rm $LFS/usr/bin/gunzip $LFS/usr/bin/gzip
```

This package is known to cause compilation problems on certain platforms. If you're having trouble compiling this package as well, you can download a patch from http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/download/gzip–1.2.4a.patch.gz

Install this patch by running the following command:

```
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   patch -Np1 -i ../gzip-1.2.4a.patch
```

Now recompile the package using the same commands as above.

Contents

The Gzip package contains the gunzip, gzexe, gzip, zcat, zcmp, zdiff, zforece, zgrep, zmore and znew programs.

Description

gunzip

gunzip decompresses files that are compressed with gzip.

gzexe

gzexe allows you to compress executables in place and have them automatically uncompress and execute when you run them (at a penalty in performance).

---

gzip

gzip reduces the size of the named files using Lempel–Ziv coding (LZ77).

---

zcat

zcat uncompresses either a list of files on the command line or its standard input and writes the uncompressed data on standard output

---

zcmp

zcmp invokes the cmp program on compressed files.

---

zdiff

zdiff invokes the diff program on compressed files.

---

zforce

zforce forces a .gz extension on all gzip files so that gzip will not compress them twice. This can be useful for files with names truncated after a file transfer.

---

zgrep

zgrep invokes the grep program on compressed files.

---

zmore

Zmore is a filter which allows examination of compressed or plain text files one screenful at a time on a soft–copy terminal (similar to the more program).

---

znew

Znew recompresses files from .Z (compress) format to .gz (gzip) format.

Installing Make

Installation of Make

Install Make by running the following commands:

```
root:make-3.79.1#   ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:make-3.79.1#   make LDFLAGS=-static
root:make-3.79.1#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
```

Contents

The Make package contains the make program.

Description

make determine automatically which pieces of a large program need to be recompiled, and issue the commands to recompile them.

Installing Sed

Installation of Sed

Install Sed by running the following commands:

```
root:sed-3.02#   CPPFLAGS=-Dre_max_failures=re_max_failures2 \
> ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:sed-3.02#   make LDFLAGS=-static
root:sed-3.02#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
root:sed-3.02#   mv $LFS/usr/bin/sed $LFS/bin
```

Contents

The Sed package contains the sed program.

Description

sed is a stream editor. A stream editor is used to perform basic text transformations on an input stream (a file or input from a pipeline).

Installing Shellutils

Installation of Shellutils

Install Shellutils by running the following commands:

```
root:sh-utils-2.0#   ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:sh-utils-2.0#   make LDFLAGS=-static
root:sh-utils-2.0#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
root:sh-utils-2.0#   cd $LFS/usr/bin
root:bin#   mv date echo false pwd stty $LFS/bin
root:bin#   mv su true uname hostname $LFS/bin
```

Contents

The Shellutils package contains the basename, chroot, date, dirname, echo, env, expr, factor, false, groups, hostid, hostname, id, logname, nice, nohup, pathchk, pinky, printenv, printf, pwd, seq, sleep, stty, su, tee, test, true, tty, uname, uptime, users, who, whoami and yes programs.

Description

basename

basename strips directory and suffixes from filenames.

---

chroot

chroot runs a command or interactive shell with special root directory.

---

date

date displays the current time in a specified format, or sets the system date.

---

dirname

dirname strips non–directory suffixes from file name.

---

echo

echo displays a line of text.

env

env runs a program in a modified environment.

expr

expr evaluates expressions.

factor

factor prints the prime factors of all specified integer numbers.

false

false always exits with a status code indicating failure.

groups

groups prints the groups a user is in.

hostid

hostid prints the numeric identifier (in hexadecimal) for the current host.

hostname

hostname sets or prints the name of the current host system

id

id prints the real and effective UIDs and GIDs of a user or the current user.

logname

logname prints the current user's login name.

---

nice

nice runs a program with modified scheduling priority.

---

nohup

nohup runs a command immune to hangups, with output to a non−tty

---

pathchk

pathchk checks whether file names are valid or portable.

---

pinky

pinky is a lightweight finger utility which retrieves information about a certain user

---

printenv

printenv prints all or part of the environment.

---

printf

printf formats and print data (the same as the printf C function).

---

pwd

pwd prints the name of the current/working directory

---

seq

seq prints numbers in a certain range with a certain increment.

---

sleep

sleep delays for a specified amount of time.

stty

stty changes and prints terminal line settings.

su

su runs a shell with substitute user and group IDs

tee

tee reads from standard input and write to standard output and files.

test

test checks file types and compares values.

true

True always exitx with a status code indicating success.

tty

tty prints the file name of the terminal connected to standard input.

uname

uname prints system information.

uptime

uptime tells how long the system has been running.

users

users prints the user names of users currently logged in to the current host.

who

who shows who is logged on.

whoami

whoami prints your effective userid.

yes

yes outputs a string repeatedly until killed.

Installing Tar

Installation of Tar

Install Tar by running the following commands:

```
root:tar-1.13#   ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:tar-1.13#   make LDFLAGS=-static
root:tar-1.13#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
root:tar-1.13#   mv $LFS/usr/bin/tar $LFS/bin
```

Contents

The tar package contains the tar and rmt programs.

Description

tar

tar is an archiving program designed to store and extract files from an archive file known as a tarfile.

---

rmt

rmt is a program used by the remote dump and restore programs in manipulating a magnetic tape drive through an interprocess communication connection.

Installing Textutils

Installation of Textutils

Install Textutils by running the following commands:

```
root:textutils-2.0#   ./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-nls
root:textutils-2.0#   make LDFLAGS=-static
root:textutils-2.0#   make prefix=$LFS/usr install
root:textutils-2.0#   mv $LFS/usr/bin/cat $LFS/bin
```

Contents

The Textutils package contains the cat, cksum, comm, split, cut, expand, fmt, fold, head, join, md5sum, nl, od, paste, pr, ptx, sort, split, sum, tac, tail, tr, tsort, unexpand, uniq and wc programs.

Description

cat

cat concatenates file(s) or standard input to standard output.

cksum

cksum prints CRC checksum and byte counts of each specified file.

comm

comm compares two sorted files line by line.

csplit

cplit outputs pieces of a file separated by (a) pattern(s) to files xx01, xx02, ..., and outputs byte counts of each piece to standard output.

cut

cut prints selected parts of lines from specified files to standard output.

expand

expand converts tabs in files to spaces, writing to standard output.

fmt

fmt reformats each paragraph in the specified file(s), writing to standard output.

fold

fold wraps input lines in each specified file (standard input by default), writing to standard output.

head

Print first xx (10 by default) lines of each specified file to standard output.

join

join joins lines of two files on a common field.

md5sum

md5sum prints or checks MD5 checksums.

nl

nl writes each specified file to standard output, with line numbers added.

od

od writes an unambiguous representation, octal bytes by default, of a specified file to standard output.

paste

paste writes lines consisting of the sequentially corresponding lines from each specified file, separated by TABs, to standard output.

---

pr

pr paginates or columnates files for printing.

---

ptx

ptx produces a permuted index of file contents.

---

sort

sort writes sorted concatenation of files to standard output.

---

split

split outputs fixed−size pieces of an input file to PREFIXaa, PREFIXab, ...

---

sum

sum prints checksum and block counts for each specified file.

---

tac

tac writes each specified file to standard output, last line first.

---

tail

tail print the last xx (10 by default) lines of each specified file to standard output.

---

tr

tr translates, squeezes, and/or deletes characters from standard input, writing to standard output.

---

tsort

tsort writes totally ordered lists consistent with the partial ordering in specified files.

unexpand

unexpand converts spaces in each file to tabs, writing to standard output.

uniq

uniq discards all but one of successive identical lines from files or standard input and writes to files or standard output.

wc

wc prints line, word, and byte counts for each specified file, and a total line if more than one file is specified.

Creating passwd and group files

In order for user and group root to be recognized and to be able to logon it needs an entry in the /etc/passwd and /etc/group file. Besides the group root a couple of other groups are recommended and needed by packages. The groups with their GID's below aren't part of any standard. The LSB only recommends besides a group root a group bin to be present with GID 1. Other group names and GID's can be chosen by yourself. Well written packages don't depend on GID numbers but just use the group name, it doesn't matter all that much what GID a group has. Since there aren't any standards for groups I won't follow any conventions used by Debian, RedHat and others. The groups added here are the groups the MAKEDEV script (the script that creates the device files in the /dev directory) mentions.

Create a new file `$LFS/etc/passwd` by running the following command:

```
root:~#   echo "root:x:0:0:root:/root:/bin/bash" >
$LFS/etc/passwd
```

Create a new file `$LFS/etc/group` by running the following command:

```
root:~#   echo "root:x:0:" > $LFS/etc/group
root:~#   echo "bin:x:1:" >> $LFS/etc/group
root:~#   echo "sys:x:2:" >> $LFS/etc/group
root:~#   echo "kmem:x:3:" >> $LFS/etc/group
root:~#   echo "tty:x:4:" >> $LFS/etc/group
root:~#   echo "uucp:x:5:" >> $LFS/etc/group
root:~#   echo "daemon:x:6:" >> $LFS/etc/group
root:~#   echo "floppy:x:7:" >> $LFS/etc/group
root:~#   echo "disk:x:8:" >> $LFS/etc/group
```

Copying /proc/devices

In order for the MAKEDEV script properly create device entries in /dev it needs access to /proc/devices. We can't mount the proc file system on our LFS system yet so instead we just copy the /proc/devices file to $LFS/proc. This means the $LFS/proc/devices file won't be updated when the kernel updates /proc/devices but I don't see any harm in doing it, since it's only needed during the execution of the MAKEDEV script. Just make sure you don't add or remove any hardware during the next 3 minutes by loading or unloading a kernel module or rebooting your computer before continuing with this book.

Copy the /proc/devices file by running the following command:

```
root:~#   cp /proc/devices $LFS/proc
```

Installing basic system software

The installation of all the software is pretty straightforward and you'll think it's so much easier and shorter to give the generic installation instructions for each package and only explain how to install something if a certain package requires an alternate installation method. Although I agree with you on that, I, however, choose to give the full instructions for each and every package. This is simply to avoid any possible confusion and errors.

Entering the chroot'ed environment

It's time to enter our chroot'ed environment in order to install the rest of the software we need.

Enter the following command to enter the chroot'ed environment. From this point on there's no need to use the $LFS variable anymore, because everything you do will be restricted to the LFS partition (since / is actually /mnt/lfs but the shell doesn't know that).

```
root:~# chroot $LFS bash --login
```

Now that we are inside a chroot'ed environment, we can continue to install all the basic system software. Make sure you execute all the following commands in this chapter from within the chroot'ed environment.

Creating device files

Installation of MAKEDEV

Install MAKEDEV by running the following commands:

```
root:MAKEDEV-2.5#   sed "s/# 9/9/" MAKEDEV >/dev/MAKEDEV
root:MAKEDEV-2.5#   chmod 754 /dev/MAKEDEV
```

Creating the /dev entries

Create the device files by running the following commands:

```
root:~#    cd /dev
root:dev#    ./MAKEDEV -v generic
```

Now that the device file entries are created the /proc/devices file can be removed by running the following command:

```
root:~#   rm /proc/devices
```

Please note that this script dates back from 1997 and therefore can be outdated and not support newer hardware. If you need device files which aren't known by this script please read the Documentation/devices.txt file in a Linux source tree. This file lists all the major and minor numbers for all the device files that the kernel knows about. With this list you can create such device files yourself. See the mknod man page for more information on how to make device files yourself.

Installing GCC

Installation of GCC

After you unpacked the gcc−2.95.2 archive don't enter the newly created gcc−2.95.2 directory but stay in the /usr/src directory. Install GCC by running the following commands:

```
root:src#   mkdir /usr/src/gcc-build
root:src#   cd /usr/src/gcc-build
root:gcc-build#   ../gcc-2.95.2/configure --prefix=/usr \
> --with-gxx-include-dir=/usr/include/g++ \
> --enable-shared --enable-languages=c,c++
root:gcc-build#   make bootstrap
root:gcc-build#   make install
```

Contents

The GCC package contains compilers, preprocessors and the GNU C++ Library.

Description

Compiler

A compiler translates source code in text format to a format that a computer understands. After a source code file is compiled into an object file, a linker will create an executable file from one or more of these compiler generated object files.

Pre−processor

A pre−processor pre−processes a source file, such as including the contents of header files into the source file. You generally don't do this yourself to save yourself a lot of time. You just insert a line like #include <filename>. The pre−processor file insert the contents of that file into the source file. That's one of the things a pre−processor does.

C++ Library

The C++ library is used by C++ programs. The C++ library contains functions that are frequently used in C++ programs. This way the programmer doesn't have to write certain functions (such as writing a string of text to the screen) from scratch every time he creates a program.

Installing Bison

Installation of Bison

Install Bison by running the following commands:

```
root:bison-1.28#   ./configure --prefix=/usr \
> --datadir=/usr/share/bison
root:bison-1.28#   make
root:bison-1.28#   make install
```

Contents

The Bison package contains the bison program.

Description

Bison is a parser generator, a replacement for YACC. YACC stands for Yet Another Compiler Compiler. What is Bison then? It is a program that generates a program that analyses the structure of a textfile. Instead of writing the actual program you specify how things should be connected and with those rules a program is constructed that analyses the textfile.

There are alot of examples where structure is needed and one of them is the calculator.

Given the string :

```
1 + 2 * 3
```

You can easily come to the result 7. Why ? Because of the structure. You know how to interpretet the string. The computer doesn't know that and Bison is a tool to help it understand by presenting the string in the following way to the compiler:

```
    +
   / \
  *   1
 / \
2   3
```

You start at the bottom of a tree and you come across the numbers 2 and 3 which are joined by the multiplication symbol, so the computers multiplies 2 and 3. The result of that multiplication is remembered and the next thing that the computer sees is the result of 2*3 and the number 1 which are joined by the add symbol. Adding 1 to the previous result makes 7. In calculating the most complex calculations can be broken down in this tree format and the computer just starts at the bottom and works it's way up to the top and comes with the correct answer. Of course, Bison isn't only used for calculators alone.

Installing Mawk

Installation of Mawk

Install Mawk by running the following commands:

```
root:mawk-1.3.3#   ./configure
root:mawk-1.3.3#   make
root:mawk-1.3.3#   make BINDIR=/usr/bin \
> MANDIR=/usr/share/man/man1 install
root:mawk-1.3.3#   cd /usr/bin
root:bin#   ln -s mawk awk
```

Contents

The Mawk package contains the mawk program.

Description

gawk

Mawk is an interpreter for the AWK Programming Language. The AWK language is useful for manipulation of data files, text retrieval and processing, and for prototyping and experimenting with algorithms.

Installing Patch

Installation of Patch

Install Patch by running the following commands:

```
root:patch-2.5.4#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:patch-2.5.4#   make
root:patch-2.5.4#   make install
```

Contents

The Patch package contains the patch program.

Description

The patch program modifies a file according to a patch file. A patch file usually is a list created by the diff program that contains instructions on how an original file needs to be modified. Patch is used a lot for source code patches since it saves time and space. Imagine you have a package that is 1MB in size. The next version of that package only has changes in two files of the first version. You can ship an entirely new package of 1MB or provide a patch file of 1KB which will update the first version to make it identical to the second version. So if you have downloaded the first version already, a patch file can save you a second large download.

Installing Findutils

Installing Findutils

Install Findutils by running the following commands:

```
root:findutils-4.1#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:findutils-4.1#   make
root:findutils-4.1#   make install
```

This package is known to cause compilation problem. If you're having trouble compiling this package as well, apply the Findutils patch.

Install this patch by running the following command:

```
root:findutils-4.1#   patch -Np1 -i ../findutils-4.1.patch
```

Now recompile the package using the same commands as above.

Contents

The Findutils package contains the find, locate, updatedb and xargs programs.

Description

Find

The find program searches for files in a directory hierarchy which match a certain criteria. If no criteria is given, it lists all files in the current directory and it's subdirectories.

Locate

Locate scans a database which contain all files and directories on a filesystem. This program lists the files and directories in this database matching a certain criteria. If you're looking for a file this program will scan the database and tell you exactly where the files you requested are located. This only makes sense if your locate database is fairly up−to−date else it will provide you with out−of−date information.

Updatedb

The updatedb program updates the locate database. It scans the entire file system (including other file system that are currently mounted unless you specify it not to) and puts every directory and file it finds into the database that's used by the locate program which retrieves this information. It's a good practice to update this database once a day so that you are ensured of a database that is up−to−date.

Xargs

The xargs command applies a command to a list of files. If you need to perform the same command on multiple files, you can create a file that contains all these files (one per line) and use xargs to perform that command on the list.

Installing Ncurses

Installation of Ncurses

Install Ncurses by running the following commands:

```
root:ncurses-4.2#   ./configure --prefix=/usr --with-shared
root:ncurses-4.2#   make
root:ncurses-4.2#   make install
```

Contents

The Ncurses package contains the ncurses, panel, menu and form libraries. It also contains the tic, infocmp, clear, tput, toe and tset programs.

Description

The libraries

The libraries that make up the Ncurses library are used to display text (often in a fancy way) on your screen. An example where ncurses is used is in the kernel's "make menuconfig" process. The libraries contain routines to create panels, menu's, form and general text display routines.

Tic

Tic is the terminfo entry–description compiler. The program translates a terminfo file from source format into the binary format for use with the ncurses library routines. Terminfo files contain information about the capabilities of your terminal.

Infocmp

The infocmp program can be used to compare a binary terminfo entry with other terminfo entries, rewrite a terminfo description to take advantage of the use= terminfo field, or print out a terminfo description from the binary file (term) in a variety of formats (the opposite of what tic does).

---

clear

The clear program clears your screen if this is possible. It looks in the environment for the terminal type and then in the terminfo database to figure out how to clear the screen.

---

tput

The tput program uses the terminfo database to make the values of terminal−dependent capabilities and information available to the shell, to initialize or reset the terminal, or return the long name of the requested terminal type.

---

toe

The toe program lists all available terminal types by primary name with descriptions.

---

tset

The Tset program initializes terminals so they can be used, but it's not widely used anymore. It's provided for 4.4BSD compatibility.

Installing Less

Installation of Less

Install Less by running the following commands:

```
root:less-358#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:less-358#   make
root:less-358#   make install
root:less-358#   mv /usr/bin/less /bin
```

Contents

The Less package contains the less program

Description

The less program is a file pager (or text viewer). It displays the contents of a file with the ability to scroll. Less is an improvement on the common pager called "more". Less has the ability to scroll backwards through files as well and it doesn't need to read the entire file when it starts, which makes it faster when you are reading large files.

Installing Groff

Installation of Groff

Install Groff by running the following commands:

```
root:groff-1.16#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:groff-1.16#   make
root:groff-1.16#   make install
```

Contents

The Groff packages contains the addftinfo, afmtodit, eqn, grodvi, groff, grog, grohtml, grolj4, grops, grotty, hpftodit, indxbib, lkbib, lookbib, neqn, nroff, pfbtops, pic, psbb, refer, soelim, tbl, tfmtodit and troff programs.

Description

addftinfo

addftinfo reads a troff font file and adds some additional font–metric information that is used by the groff system.

---

afmtodit

afmtodit creates a font file for use with groff and grops.

---

eqn

eqn compiles descriptions of equations embedded within troff input files into commands that are understood by troff.

---

grodvi

grodvi is a driver for groff that produces TeX dvi format.

---

groff

groff is a front−end to the groff document formatting system. Normally it runs the troff program and a postprocessor appropriate for the selected device.

---

grog

grog reads files and guesses which of the groff options −e, −man, −me, −mm, −ms, −p, −s, and −t are required for printing files, and prints the groff command including those options on the standard output.

---

grohtml

grohtml translates the output of GNU troff to html

---

grolj4

grolj4 is a driver for groff that produces output in PCL5 format suitable for an HP Laserjet 4 printer.

---

grops

grops translates the output of GNU troff to PostScript.

---

grotty

grotty translates the output of GNU troff into a form suitable for typewriter−like devices.

---

hpftodit

hpftodit creates a font file for use with groff −Tlj4 from an HP tagged font metric file.

---

indxbib

indxbib makes an inverted index for the bibliographic databases a specified file for use with refer, lookbib, and lkbib.

---

lkbib

lkbib searches bibliographic databases for references that contain specified keys and prints any references found on the standard output.

lookbib

lookbib prints a prompt on the standard error (unless the standard input is not a terminal), reads from the standard input a line containing a set of keywords, searches the bibliographic databases in a specified file for references containing those keywords, prints any references found on the standard output, and repeats this process until the end of input.

neqn

It is currently not known what neqn is and what it does.

nroff

The nroff script emulates the nroff command using groff.

pfbtops

pfbtops translates a PostScript font in .pfb format to ASCII.

pic

pic compiles descriptions of pictures embedded within troff or TeX input files into commands that are understood by TeX or troff.

psbb

psbb reads a file which should be a PostScript document conforming to the Document Structuring conventions and looks for a %%BoundingBox comment.

refer

refer copies the contents of a file to the standard output, except that lines between .[and .] are interpreted as citations, and lines between .R1 and .R2 are interpreted as commands about how citations are to be processed.

soelim

soelim reads files and replaces lines of the form *.so file* by the contents of *file*.

tbl

tbl compiles descriptions of tables embedded within troff input files into commands that are understood by troff.

---

tfmtodit

tfmtodit creates a font file for use with **`groff -Tdvi`**

---

troff

troff is highly compatible with Unix troff. Usually it should be invoked using the groff command, which will also run preprocessors and postprocessors in the appropriate order and with the appropriate options.

Installing Man

Installation of Man

Install Man by running the following commands:

```
root:man-1.5h1#   ./configure -default
root:man-1.5h1#   make
root:man-1.5h1#   make install
```

Contents

The Man package contains the man, apropos whatis and makewhatis programs.

Description

man

man formats and displays the on−line manual pages.

apropos

apropos searches a set of database files containing short descriptions of system commands for keywords and displays the result on the standard output.

whatis

whatis searches a set of database files containing short descriptions of system commands for keywords and displays the result on the standard output. Only complete word matches are displayed.

makewhatis

makewhatis reads all the manual pages contained in given sections of manpath or the preformatted pages contained in the given sections of catpath. For each page, it writes a line in the whatis database; each line consists of the name of the page and a short description, separated by a dash. The description is extracted using the content of the NAME section of the manual page.

Installing Perl

Installation of Perl

Install Perl by running the following commands:

```
root:perl-5.6.0#   ./Configure -Dprefix=/usr
root:perl-5.6.0#   make
root:perl-5.6.0#   make test
root:perl-5.6.0#   make install
```

If you don't want to answer all those questions Perl asks you, you can add the -d option to the configure script and Perl will use all the default settings.

Also note that a few tests during the make test phase will fail for various reasons. One being there's not network support yet and a few packages haven't been installed yet. It's ok if not every test succeeds. If there are between 5 and 10 failed tests you're just fine. You might want to reinstall perl after you're done with chapter 7.

Contents

The Perl package contains Perl – Practical Extraction and Report Language

Description

Perl combines the features and capabilities of C, awk, sed and sh into one powerful programming language.

Installing M4

Installation of M4

Install M4 by running the following commands:

```
root:m4-1.4#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:m4-1.4#   make
root:m4-1.4#   make install
```

Contents

The M4 package contains the M4 processor

Description

M4 is a macro processor. It copies input to output expanding macros as it goes. Macros are either builtin or user–defined and can take any number of arguments. Besides just doing macro expansion m4 has builtin functions for including named files, running UNIX commands, doing integer arithmetic, manipulating text in various ways, recursion, etc. M4 can be used either as a front–end to a compiler or as a macro processor in its own right.

Installing Texinfo

Installation of Texinfo

Install Texinfo by running the following commands:

```
root:texinfo-4.0#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:texinfo-4.0#   make
root:texinfo-4.0#   make install
```

Contents

The Texinfo package contains the info, install–info, makeinfo, texi2dvi and texindex programs

Description

info

The info program reads Info documents, usually contained in your /usr/doc/info directory. Info documents are like man(ual) pages, but they tend to be more in depth than just explaining the options to a program.

install–info

The install–info program updates the info entries. When you run the info program a list with available topics (ie: available info documents) will be presented. The install–info program is used to maintain this list of available topics. If you decice to remove info files manually, you need to delete the topic in the index file as well. This program is used for that. It also works the other way around when you add info documents.

makeinfo

The makeinfo program translates Texinfo source documents into various formats. Available formats are: info files, plain text and HTML.

texi2dvi

The texi2dvi program prints Texinfo documents

texindex

The texindex program is used to sort Texinfo index files.

Installing Autoconf

Installation of Autoconf

Install Autoconf by running the following commands:

```
root:autoconf-2.13#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:autoconf-2.13#   make
root:autoconf-2.13#   make install
```

Contents

The Autoconf package contains the autoconf, autoheader, autoreconf, autoscan, autoupdate and ifnames programs

---

Description

autoconf

Autoconf is a tool for producing shell scripts that automatically configure software source code packages to adapt to many kinds of UNIX–like systems. The configuration scripts produced by Autoconf are independent of Autoconf when they are run, so their users do not need to have Autoconf.

---

autoheader

The autoheader program can create a template file of C #define statements for configure to use

---

autoreconf

If you have a lot of Autoconf–generated configure scripts, the autoreconf program can save you some work. It runs autoconf (and autoheader, where appropriate) repeatedly to remake the Autoconf configure scripts and configuration header templates in the directory tree rooted at the current directory.

---

autoscan

The autoscan program can help you create a configure.in file for a software package. autoscan examines source files in the directory tree rooted at a directory given as a command line argument, or the current directory if none is given. It searches the source files for common portability problems and creates a file configure.scan which is a preliminary configure.in for that package.

autoupdate

The autoupdate program updates a configure.in file that calls Autoconf macros by their old names to use the current macro names.

ifnames

ifnames can help when writing a configure.in for a software package. It prints the identifiers that the package already uses in C preprocessor conditionals. If a package has already been set up to have some portability, this program can help you figure out what its configure needs to check for. It may help fill in some gaps in a configure.in generated by autoscan.

Installing Automake

Installation of Automake

Install Automake by running the following commands:

```
root:automake-1.4#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:automake-1.4#   make install
```

Contents

The Automake package contains the aclocal and automake programs

---

Description

aclocal

Automake includes a number of Autoconf macros which can be used in your package; some of them are actually required by Automake in certain situations. These macros must be defined in your aclocal.m4; otherwise they will not be seen by autoconf.

The aclocal program will automatically generate aclocal.m4 files based on the contents of configure.in. This provides a convenient way to get Automake–provided macros, without having to search around. Also, the aclocal mechanism is extensible for use by other packages.

---

automake

To create all the Makefile.in's for a package, run the automake program in the top level directory, with no arguments. automake will automatically find each appropriate Makefile.am (by scanning configure.in) and generate the corresponding Makefile.in.

Installing Bash

Installation of Bash

Install Bash by running the following commands:

```
root:bash-2.04#   ./configure --prefix=/usr --with-ncurses
root:bash-2.04#   make
root:bash-2.04#   make install
root:bash-2.04#   logout
root:~#   mv $LFS/usr/bin/bash $LFS/usr/bin/bashbug $LFS/bin
root:~#   chroot $LFS bash --login
```

Contents

The Bash package contains the bash program

Description

Bash is the Bourne−Again SHell, which is a widely used command interpreter on Unix systems. Bash is a program that reads from standard input, the keyboard. You type something and the program will evaluate what you have typed and do something with it, like running a program.

Installing Flex

Installation of Flex

Install Flex by running the following commands:

```
root:flex-2.5.4a#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:flex-2.5.4a#   make
root:flex-2.5.4a#   make install
```

Contents

The Flex package contains the flex program

Description

Flex is a tool for generating programs which regognize patterns in text. Pattern recognition is very useful in many applications. You set up rules what to look for and flex will make a program that looks for those patterns. The reason people use flex is that it is much easier to set up rules for what to look for than to write the actual program that finds the text.

Installing File

Installation of File

Install File by running the following commands:

```
root:file-3.31#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
--datadir=/usr/share/misc
root:file-3.31#   make
root:file-3.31#   make install
```

Contents

The File package contains the file program.

Description

File tests each specified file in an attempt to classify it. There are three sets of tests, performed in this order: filesystem tests, magic number tests, and language tests. The first test that succeeds causes the file type to be printed.

Installing Libtool

Installation of Libtool

Install Libtool by running the following commands:

```
root:libtool-1.3.5#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:libtool-1.3.5#   make
root:libtool-1.3.5#   make install
```

Contents

The Libtool package contains the libtool and libtoolize programs. It also contains the ltdl library.

Description

libtool

Libtool provides generalized library−building support services.

libtoolize

libtoolize provides a standard way to add libtool support to your package.

ltdl library

Libtool provides a small library, called `libltdl', that aims at hiding the various difficulties of dlopening libraries from programmers.

Installing Bin86

Installation of Bin86

Install Linux86 by running the following commands:

```
root:bin86#    make
root:bin86#   make PREFIX=/usr install
```

Contents

The Bin86 contains the as86, as86_encap, ld86, objdump86, nm86 and size86 programs.

Description

as86

as86 is an assembler for the 8086...80386 processors.

---

as86_encap

as86_encap is a shell script to call as86 and convert the created binary into a C file prog.v to be included in or linked with programs like boot block installers.

---

ld86

ld86 understands only the object files produced by the as86 assembler, it can link them into either an impure or a separate I&D executable.

---

objdump86

No description available.

---

nm86

No description available.

size86

No description available.

Installing Binutils

Installation of Binutils

Install Binutils by running the following commands:

```
root:binutils-2.10#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:binutils-2.10#   make -e tooldir=/usr
root:binutils-2.10#   make -e tooldir=/usr install
```

Description

The Binutils package contains the ld, as, ar, nm, objcopy, objdump, ranlib, size, strings, strip, c++filt, addr2line and nlmconv programs

Description

ld

ld combines a number of object and archive files, relocates their data and ties up symbol references. Often the last step in building a new compiled program to run is a call to ld.

as

as is primarily intended to assemble the output of the GNU C compiler gcc for use by the linker ld.

ar

The ar program creates, modifies, and extracts from archives. An archive is a single file holding a collection of other files in a structure that makes it possible to retrieve the original individual files (called members of the archive).

nm

nm lists the symbols from object files.

objcopy

objcopy utility copies the contents of an object file to another. objcopy uses the GNU BFD Library to read and write the object files. It can write the destination object file in a format different from that of the source object file.

---

objdump

objdump displays information about one or more object files. The options control what particular information to display. This information is mostly useful to programmers who are working on the compilation tools, as opposed to programmers who just want their program to compile and work.

---

ranlib

ranlib generates an index to the contents of an archive, and stores it in the archive. The index lists each symbol defined by a member of an archive that is a relocatable object file.

---

size

size lists the section sizes −−and the total size−− for each of the object files objfile in its argument list. By default, one line of output is generated for each object file or each module in an archive.

---

strings

For each file given, strings prints the printable character sequences that are at least 4 characters long (or the number specified with an option to the program) and are followed by an unprintable character. By default, it only prints the strings from the initialized and loaded sections of object files; for other types of files, it prints the strings from the whole file.

strings is mainly useful for determining the contents of non−text files.

---

strip

strip discards all or specific symbols from object files. The list of object files may include archives. At least one object file must be given. strip modifies the files named in its argument, rather than writing modified copies under different names.

---

c++filt

The C++ language provides function overloading, which means that you can write many functions with the same name (providing each takes parameters of different types). All C++ function names are encoded into a low−level assembly label (this process is known as mangling). The c++filt program does the inverse

mapping: it decodes (demangles) low−level names into user−level names so that the linker can keep these overloaded functions from clashing.

---

addr2line

addr2line translates program addresses into file names and line numbers. Given an address and an executable, it uses the debugging information in the executable to figure out which file name and line number are associated with a given address.

---

nlmconv

nlmconv converts relocatable object files into the NetWare Loadable Module files, optionally reading header files for NLM header information.

Installing Bzip2

Installation of Bzip2

Install Bzip2 by running the following commands:

```
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   make -f Makefile-libbz2_so
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   make bzip2recover libbz2.a
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   cp bzip2-shared /bin/bzip2
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   cp bzip2recover /bin
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   cp bzip2.1 /usr/share/man/man1
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   cp bzlib.h /usr/include
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   cp -a libbz2.so* libbz2.a /lib
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   rm /usr/lib/libbz2.a
root:bzip2-1.0.1#   cd /bin
root:bin#   rm bunzip2 && ln -s bzip2 bunzip2
root:bin#   rm bzcat && ln -s bzip2 bzcat
```

Although it's not strictly a part of a basic LFS system it's worth mentioning that you can donwload a patch for Tar which enables the tar program to compress and uncompress using bzip2/bunzip2 easily. With a plain tar you'll have to use constructions like bzcat file.tar.bz|tar xv or tar --use-compress-prog=bunzip2 -xvf file.tar.bz2 to use bzip2 and bunzip2 with tar. This patch gives you the -y option so you can unpack a Bzip2 archive with tar xvfy file.tar.bz2. Applying this patch will be mentioned later on when you re-install the Tar package.

Contents

The Bzip2 packages contains the bzip2, bunzip2, bzcat and bzip2recover programs.

Description

Bzip2

bzip2 compresses files using the Burrows-Wheeler block sorting text compression algorithm, and Huffman coding. Compression is generally considerably better than that achieved by more conventional LZ77/LZ78-based compressors, and approaches the performance of the PPM family of statistical compressors.

Bunzip2

Bunzip2 decompresses files that are compressed with bzip2.

---

bzcat

bzcat (or bzip2 –dc) decompresses all specified files to the standard output.

---

bzip2recover

bzip2recover recovers data from damaged bzip2 files.

Installing Gettext

Installation of Gettext

Install Gettext by running the following commands:

```
root:gettext-0.10.35#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:gettext-0.10.35#   make
root:gettext-0.10.35#   make install
root:gettext-0.10.35#   mv /po-mode.el /usr/share/gettext
```

Contents

The gettext package contains the gettext, gettextize, msgcmp, msgcomm, msgfmt, msgmerge, msgunfmt and xgettext programs.

Description

gettext

The gettext package is used for internationalization (also known as i18n) and for localization (also known as l10n). Programs can be compiled with Native Language Support (NLS) which enable them to output messages in your native language rather than in the default English languge.

Installing Consoletools

Installation of Console−tools

Before you start installing Console−tools you have to unpack the console−tools−0.2.3.patch file.

Install Console−tools by running the following commands:

```
root:console-tools-0.2.3#   patch -Np1 -i
../console-tools-0.2.3.patch
root:console-tools-0.2.3#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:console-tools-0.2.3#   make
root:console-tools-0.2.3#   make install
root:console-tools-0.2.3#   cd /usr/share/keymaps
root:keymaps#   ln -s <path-to-kmap-file> defkeymap.kmap.gz
```

Please replace <path−to−kmap−file> by the correct path to the desired kmap.gz file. An example could be i386/qwerty/us.kmap.gz

---

Contents

The Console−tools package contains the charset, chvt, consolechars, deallocvt, dumpkeys, fgconsole, fix_bs_and_del, font2psf, getkeycodes, kbd_mode, loadkeys, loadunimap, mapscrn, mk_modmap, openvt, psfaddtable, psfgettable, psfstriptable, resizecons, saveunimap, screendump, setfont, setkeycodes, setleds, setmetamode, setvesablank, showcfont, showkey, splitfont, unicode_start, unicode_stop, vcstime, vt−is−URF8, writevt

---

Description

charset

charset sets an ACM for use in one of the G0/G1 charsets slots.

---

chvt

chvt changes foreground virtual terminal.

---

codepage

No description available.

consolechars

consolechars loads EGA/VGA console screen fonts, screen font maps and/or application−charset maps.

deallocvt

deallocvt deallocates unused virtual terminals.

dumpkeys

dumpkeys dumps keyboard translation tables.

fgconsole

fgconsole prints the number of the active virtual terminal.

fix_bs_and_del

No description available.

font2psf

No description available.

getkeycodes

getkeycodes prints the kernel scancode−to−keycode mapping table.

kbd_mode

kbd_mode reports or sets the keyboard mode.

loadkeys

loadkeys loads keyboard translation tables.

loadunimap

No description available.

mapscrn

No description available.

mk_modmap

No description available.

openvt

openvt starts a program on a new virtual terminal.

psfaddtable

psfaddtable adds a Unicode character table to a console font.

psfgettable

psfgettable extracts the embedded Unicode character table from a console font.

psfstriptable

psfstriptable removes the embedded Unicode character table from a console font.

resizecons

resizecons changes the kernel idea of the console size.

saveunimap

No description available.

---

screendump

No description available.

---

setfont

No description available.

---

setkeycodes

setkeycodes loads kernel scancode–to–keycode mapping table entries.

---

setleds

setleds sets the keyboard leds.

---

setmetamode

setmetamode defines the keyboard meta key handling.

---

setvesablank

No description available.

---

showcfont

showcfont displays all character in the current screenfont.

---

showkey

showkey examines the scancodes and keycodes sent by the keyboard.

---

splitfont

No description available.

---

unicode_start

unicode_start puts the console in Unicode mode.

---

unicode_stop

No description available.

---

vcstime

No description available.

---

vt−is−UTF8

vt−is−UTF8 checks whether the current virtual terminal is in UTF8− or byte−mode.

---

writevt

No description available.

Installing Consoledata

Installation of Console–data

Install Console–data by running the following commands:

```
root:console-data-1999.08.29#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:console-data-1999.08.29#   make
root:console-data-1999.08.29#   make install
```

Contents

The console–data package contains the data files that are used and needed by the console–tools package.

Installing Diffutils

Installation of Diffutils

Install Diffutils by running the following commands:

```
root:diffutils-2.7#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:diffutils-2.7#   make
root:diffutils-2.7#   make install
```

Contents

The Diffutils packagec contains the cmp, diff, diff3 and sdiff programs.

Description

cmp and diff

cmp and diff both compare two files and report their differences. Both programs have extra options which compare files in different situations.

---

diff3

The difference between diff and diff3 is that diff comprares 2 files, diff3 compares 3 files.

---

sdiff

sdiff merges two two files and interactively outputs the results.

Installing E2fsprogs

Installation of E2fsprogs

Install E2fsprogs by running the following commands:

```
root:e2fsprogs-1.19#    ./configure --prefix=/usr
--with-root-prefix= \
> --enable-elf-shlibs
root:e2fsprogs-1.19#    make
root:e2fsprogs-1.19#    make install
```

Contents

The e2fsprogs package contains the chattr, lsattr, uuidgen, badblocks, debugfs, dumpe2fs, e2fsck, e2label, fsck, fsck.ext2, mke2fs, mkfs.ext2, mklost+found and tune2fs programs.

Description

chattr

chattr changes the file attributes on a Linux second extended file system.

---

lsattr

lsattr lists the file attributes on a second extended file system.

---

uuidgen

The uuidgen program creates a new universally unique identifier (UUID) using the libuuid library. The new UUID can reasonably be considered unique among all UUIDs created on the local system, and among UUIDs created on other systems in the past and in the future.

---

badblocks

badblocks is used to search for bad blocks on a device (usually a disk partition).

---

debugfs

The debugfs program is a file system debugger. It can be used to examine and change the state of an ext2 file system.

---

dumpe2fs

dumpe2fs prints the super block and blocks group information for the filesystem present on a specified device.

---

e2fsck and fsck.ext2

e2fsck is used to check a Linux second extended file system. fsck.ext2 does the same as e2fsck.

---

e2label

e2label will display or change the filesystem label on the ext2 filesystem located on the specified device.

---

fsck

fsck is used to check and optionally repair a Linux file system.

---

mke2fs and mkfs.ext2

mke2fs is used to create a Linux second extended file system on a device (usually a disk partition). mkfs.ext2 does the same as mke2fs.

---

mklost+found

mklost+found is used to create a lost+found directory in the current working directory on a Linux second extended file system. mklost+found pre−allocates disk blocks to the directory to make it usable by e2fsck.

---

tune2fs

tune2fs adjusts tunable filesystem parameters on a Linux second extended filesystem.

Installing Ed

Installation of Ed

Install Ed by running the following commands:

```
root:ed-0.2#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:ed-0.2#   make
root:ed-0.2#   make install
root:ed-0.2#   mv /usr/bin/ed /usr/bin/red /bin
```

Contents

The Ed package contains the ed program.

Description

Ed is a line–oriented text editor. It is used to create, display, modify and otherwise manipulate text files.

Installing Fileutils

Installation of Fileutils

Install Fileutils by running the following commands:

```
root:fileutils-4.0#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:fileutils-4.0#   make
root:fileutils-4.0#   make install
root:fileutils-4.0#   cd /usr/bin
root:bin#   mv chgrp chmod chown cp dd df dir /bin
root:bin#   mv dircolors du install ln ls mkdir mkfifo /bin
root:bin#   mv mknod mv rm rmdir sync touch vdir /bin
```

Contents

The Fileutils package contains the chgrp, chmod, chown, cp, dd, df, dir, dircolors, du, install, ln, ls, mkdir, mkfifo, mknod, mv, rm, rmdir, sync, touch and vdir programs.

Description

chgrp

chgrp changes the group ownership of each given file to the named group, which can be either a group name or a numeric group ID.

chmod

chmod changes the permissions of each given file according to mode, which can be either a symbolic representation of changes to make, or an octal number representing the bit pattern for the new permissions.

chown

chown changes the user and/or group ownership of each given file.

cp

cp copies files from one place to another.

---

dd

dd copies a file (from the standard input to the standard output, by default) with a user–selectable blocksize, while optionally performing conversions on it.

---

df

df displays the amount of disk space available on the filesystem containing each file name argument. If no file name is given, the space available on all currently mounted filesystems is shown.

---

ls, dir and vdir

dir and vdir are versions of ls with different default output formats. These programs list each given file or directory name. Directory contents are sorted alphabetically. For ls, files are by default listed in columns, sorted vertically, if the standard output is a terminal; otherwise they are listed one per line. For dir, files are by default listed in columns, sorted vertically. For vdir, files are by default listed in long format.

---

dircolors

dircolors outputs commands to set the LS_COLOR environment variable. The LS_COLOR variable is use to change the default color scheme used by ls and related utilities.

---

du

du displays the amount of disk space used by each argument and for each subdirectory of directory arguments.

---

install

install copies files and sets their permission modes and, if possible, their owner and group.

---

ln

ln makes hard or soft (symbolic) links between files.

---

mkdir

mkdir creates directories with a given name.

---

mkfifo

mkfifo creates a FIFO with each given name.

---

mknod

mknod creates a FIFO, character special file, or block special file with the given file name.

---

mv

mv moves files from one directory to another or renames files, depending on the arguments given to mv.

---

rm

rm removes files or directories.

---

rmdir

rmdir removes directories, if they are empty.

---

sync

sync forces changed blocks to disk and updates the super block.

---

touch

touch changes the access and modification times of each given file to the current time. Files that do not exist are created empty.

Installing Grep

Installation of Grep

Install Grep by running the following commands:

```
root:grep-2.4.2#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:grep-2.4.2#   make
root:grep-2.4.2#   make install
```

Contents

The grep package contains the egrep, fgrep and grep programs.

Description

egrep

egrep prints lines from files matching an extended regular expression pattern.

---

fgrep

fgrep prints lines from files matching a list of fixed strings, separated by newlines, any of which is to be matched.

---

grep

grep prints lines from files matching a basic regular expression pattern.

Installing Gzip

Installation of Gzip

Install Gzip by running the following commands:

```
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   make
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   make install
root:gzip-1.2.4a#   cd /usr/bin
root:bin#   mv gzip /bin
root:bin#   rm gunzip /bin/gunzip
root:bin#   cd /bin
root:bin#   ln -s gzip gunzip
```

Contents

The Gzip package contains the gunzip, gzexe, gzip, zcat, zcmp, zdiff, zforece, zgrep, zmore and znew programs.

Description

gunzip

gunzip decompresses files that are compressed with gzip.

gzexe

gzexe allows you to compress executables in place and have them automatically uncompress and execute when you run them (at a penalty in performance).

gzip

gzip reduces the size of the named files using Lempel–Ziv coding (LZ77).

zcat

zcat uncompresses either a list of files on the command line or its standard input and writes the uncompressed data on standard output

zcmp

zcmp invokes the cmp program on compressed files.

zdiff

zdiff invokes the diff program on compressed files.

zforce

zforce forces a .gz extension on all gzip files so that gzip will not compress them twice. This can be useful for files with names truncated after a file transfer.

zgrep

zgrep invokes the grep program on compressed files.

zmore

Zmore is a filter which allows examination of compressed or plain text files one screenful at a time on a soft–copy terminal (similar to the more program).

znew

Znew recompresses files from .Z (compress) format to .gz (gzip) format.

Installing Ldso

Installation of Ld.so

Install Ld.so by running the following commands:

```
root:ld.so-1.9.9#   cd util
root:util#   make ldd ldconfig
root:util#   cp ldd /bin
root:util#   cp ldconfig /sbin
root:util#   cd ../man
root:man#   cp ldd.1 /usr/share/man/man1
root:man#   cp *.8 /usr/share/man/man8
root:man#   rm /usr/bin/ldd
root:man#   hash -r
```

The "hash -r" command is to make bash forget about the locations of previously executed commands. If you have executed ldd before, bash expects it to be found in /usr/bin. Since we moved it to /bin, the cache needs to be purged so bash can find it in /bin when you want to execute it again.

You might have noticed that we don't use the compiler optimizations for this package. The reason is that overriding the CFLAGS variable causes compilation problems. You would have to edit the Config.mk file and add the proper values to the CFLAGS variable and then compile the package. If you want to do that it's up to you. I don't think it's worth the trouble though. The ld and ldd programs usually are only rarely used.

Contents

From the Ld.so package we're using the ldconfig and ldd programs.

Description

ldconfig

ldconfig creates the necessary links and cache (for use by the run-time linker, ld.so) to the most recent shared libraries found in the directories specified on the command line, in the file /etc/ld.so.conf, and in the trusted directories (/usr/lib and /lib). ldconfig checks the header and file names of the libraries it encounters when determining which versions should have their links updated.

ldd

ldd prints the shared libraries required by each program or shared library specified on the command line.

Installing Make

Installation of Make

Install Make by running the following commands:

```
root:make-3.79.1#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:make-3.79.1#   make
root:make-3.79.1#   make install
```

Contents

The Make package contains the make program.

Description

make determine automatically which pieces of a large program need to be recompiled, and issue the commands to recompile them.

Installing Modutils

Installation of Modutils

Install Modutils by running the following commands:

```
root:modutils-2.3.13#   ./configure
root:modutils-2.3.13#   make
root:modutils-2.3.13#   make install
```

Contents

The Modutils package contains the depmod, genksyms, insmod, insmod_ksymoops_clean, kerneld, kernelversion, ksyms, lsmod, modinfo, modprobe and rmmod programs.

Description

depmod

depmod handles dependency descriptions for loadable kernel modules.

genksyms

genksyms reads (on standard input) the output from gcc −E source.c and generates a file containing version information.

insmod

insmod installs a loadable module in the running kernel.

insmod_ksymoops_clean

insmod_ksymoops_clean deletes saved ksyms and modules not accessed in 2 days.

kerneld

kerneld performs kernel action in user space (such as on−demand loading of modules)

kernelversion

kernelversion reports the major version of the running kernel.

ksyms

ksyms displays exported kernel symbols.

lsmod

lsmod shows information about all loaded modules.

modinfo

modinfo examines an object file associated with a kernel module and displays any information that it can glean.

modprobe

Modprobe uses a Makefile−like dependency file, created by depmod, to automatically load the relevant module(s) from the set of modules available in predefined directory trees.

rmmod

rmmod unloads loadable modules from the running kernel.

Installing Procinfo

Installation of Procinfo

Install Procinfo by running the following commands:

```
root:procinfo-17#   sed "s/-ltermcap/-lncurses/" Makefile
>Makefile2
root:procinfo-17#   mv Makefile2 Makefile
root:procinfo-17#   make
root:procinfo-17#   make install
```

Contents

The Procinfo package contains the procinfo program.

Description

procinfo gathers some system data from the /proc directory and prints it nicely formatted on the standard output device.

Installing Procps

Installation of Procps

Edit the `Makefile` file and edit the CFLAGS variable if you want to add compiler optimizations to this package.

Install Procps by running the following commands:

```
root:procps-2.0.7#   sed "s/XConsole/#XConsole/" Makefile
>Makefile2
root:procps-2.0.7#   mv Makefile2 Makefile
root:procps-2.0.7#   make
root:procps-2.0.7#   make install
root:procps-2.0.7#   mv /usr/bin/kill /bin
```

Contents

The Procps package contains the free, kill, oldps, ps, skill, snice, sysctl, tload, top, uptime, vmstat, w and watch programs.

Description

free

free displays the total amount of free and used physical and swap memory in the system, as well as the shared memory and buffers used by the kernel.

---

kill

kills sends signals to processes.

---

oldps and ps

ps gives a snapshot of the current processes.

---

skill

skill sends signals to process matching a criteria.

---

snice

snice changes the scheduling priority for process matching a criteria.

---

sysctl

sysctl modifies kernel parameters at runtime.

---

tload

tload prints a graph of the current system load average to the specified tty (or the tty of the tload process if none is specified).

---

top

top provides an ongoing look at processor activity in real time.

---

uptime

uptime gives a one line display of the following information: the current time, how long the system has been running, how many users are currently logged on, and the system load averages for the past 1, 5, and 15 minutes.

---

vmstat

vmstat reports information about processes, memory, paging, block IO, traps, and cpu activity.

---

w

w displays information about the users currently on the machine, and their processes.

---

watch

watch runs command repeatedly, displaying its output (the first screenfull).

Installing Psmisc

Installation of Psmisc

Edit the `Makefile` file and edit the CFLAGS variable if you want to add compiler optimizations to this package.

Install Psmisc by running the following commands:

```
root:psmisc#   sed "s/-ltermcap/-lncurses/" Makefile
>Makefile2
root:psmisc#   mv Makefile2 Makefile
root:psmisc#   make
root:psmisc#   make install
```

Contents

The Psmisc package contains the fuser, killall and pstree programs.

Description

fuser

fuser displays the PIDs of processes using the specified files or file systems.

---

killall

killall sends a signal to all processes running any of the specified commands.

---

pstree

pstree shows running processes as a tree.

Installing Sed

Installation of Sed

Install Sed by running the following commands:

```
root:sed-3.02#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:sed-3.02#   make
root:sed-3.02#   make install
root:sed-3.02#   mv /usr/bin/sed /bin
```

Contents

The Sed package contains the sed program.

Description

sed is a stream editor. A stream editor is used to perform basic text transformations on an input stream (a file or input from a pipeline).

Installing Shadowpwd

Installation of Shadow Password Suite

Install the Shadow Password Suite by running the following commands:

```
root:shadow-19990827#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:shadow-19990827#   make
root:shadow-19990827#   make install
root:shadow-19990827#   cd etc
root:etc#   cp limits login.access \
> login.defs.linux shells suauth /etc
root:etc#   mv /etc/login.defs.linux /etc/login.defs
```

Contents

The Shadow Password Suite contains the chage, chfn, chsh, expiry, faillog, gpasswd, lastlog, login, newgrp, passwd, sg, su, chpasswd, dpasswd, groupadd, groupdel, groupmod, grpck, grpconv, grpunconv, logoutd, mkpasswd, newusers, pwck, pwconv, pwunconv, useradd, userdel, usermod and vipw programs.

Description

chage

chage changes the number of days between password changes and the date of the last password change.

---

chfn

chfn changes user fullname, office number, office extension, and home phone number information for a user's account.

---

chsh

chsh changes the user login shell.

---

expiry

It's currently unknown what this program is for.

---

faillog

faillog formats the contents of the failure log,/var/log/faillog, and maintains failure counts and limits.

---

gpasswd

gpasswd is used to administer the /etc/group file

---

lastlog

lastlog formats and prints the contents of the last login log, /var/log/lastlog. The login−name, port, and last login time will be printed.

---

login

login is used to establish a new session with the system.

---

newgrp

newgrp is used to change the current group ID during a login session.

---

passwd

passwd changes passwords for user and group accounts.

---

sg

sg executes command as a different group ID.

---

su

Change the effective user id and group id to that of a user. This replaces the su programs that's installed from the Shellutils package.

---

chpasswd

chpasswd reads a file of user name and password pairs from standard input and uses this information to update a group of existing users.

---

dpasswd

dpasswd adds, deletes, and updates dialup passwords for user login shells.

---

groupadd

The groupadd command creates a new group account using the values specified on the command line and the default values from the system.

---

groupdel

The groupdel command modifies the system account files, deleting all entries that refer to group.

---

groupmod

The groupmod command modifies the system account files to reflect the changes that are specified on the command line.

---

grpck

grpck verifies the integrity of the system authentication information.

---

grpconv

grpunconv converts to shadow group files from normal group files.

---

grpunconv

grpunconv converts from shadow group files to normal group files.

---

logoutd

logoutd enforces the login time and port restrictions specified in /etc/porttime.

---

mkpasswd

mkpasswd reads a file in the format given by the flags and converts it to the corresponding database file format.

---

newusers

newusers reads a file of user name and cleartext password pairs and uses this information to update a group of existing users or to create new users.

---

pwck

pwck verifies the integrity of the system authentication information.

---

pwconv

pwconv converts to shadow passwd files from normal passwd files.

---

pwunconv

pwunconv converts from shadow passwd files to normal files.

---

useradd

useradd creates a new user or update default new user information.

---

userdel

userdel modifies the system account files, deleting all entries that refer to a specified login name.

---

usermod

usermod modifies the system account files to reflect the changes that are specified on the command line.

---

vipw and vigr

vipw and vigr will edit the files /etc/passwd and /etc/group, respectively. With the −s flag, they will edit the shadow versions of those files, /etc/shadow and /etc/gshadow, respectively.

Installing Shellutils

Installation of Shell Utils

Install Shellutils by running the following commands:

```
root:sh-utils-2.0#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:sh-utils-2.0#   make
root:sh-utils-2.0#   make install
root:sh-utils-2.0#   cd /usr/bin
root:bin#   mv date echo false pwd stty /bin
root:bin#   mv su true uname hostname /bin
```

Contents

The Shellutils package contains the basename, chroot, date, dirname, echo, env, expr, factor, false, groups, hostid, hostname, id, logname, nice, nohup, pathchk, pinky, printenv, printf, pwd, seq, sleep, stty, su, tee, test, true, tty, uname, uptime, users, who, whoami and yes programs.

Description

basename

basename strips directory and suffixes from filenames.

---

chroot

chroot runs a command or interactive shell with special root directory.

---

date

date displays the current time in a specified format, or sets the system date.

---

dirname

dirname strips non–directory suffixes from file name.

---

echo

echo displays a line of text.

env

env runs a program in a modified environment.

expr

expr evaluates expressions.

factor

factor prints the prime factors of all specified integer numbers.

false

false always exits with a status code indicating failure.

groups

groups prints the groups a user is in.

hostid

hostid prints the numeric identifier (in hexadecimal) for the current host.

hostname

hostname sets or prints the name of the current host system

id

id prints the real and effective UIDs and GIDs of a user or the current user.

logname

logname prints the current user's login name.

nice

nice runs a program with modified scheduling priority.

nohup

nohup runs a command immune to hangups, with output to a non−tty

pathchk

pathchk checks whether file names are valid or portable.

pinky

pinky is a lightweight finger utility which retrieves information about a certain user

printenv

printenv prints all or part of the environment.

printf

printf formats and print data (the same as the printf C function).

pwd

pwd prints the name of the current/working directory

seq

seq prints numbers in a certain range with a certain increment.

sleep

sleep delays for a specified amount of time.

---

stty

stty changes and prints terminal line settings.

---

su

su runs a shell with substitute user and group IDs

---

tee

tee reads from standard input and write to standard output and files.

---

test

test checks file types and compares values.

---

true

True always exitx with a status code indicating success.

---

tty

tty prints the file name of the terminal connected to standard input.

---

uname

uname prints system information.

---

uptime

uptime tells how long the system has been running.

---

users

users prints the user names of users currently logged in to the current host.

who

who shows who is logged on.

whoami

whoami prints your effective userid.

yes

yes outputs a string repeatedly until killed.

Installing Vim

Installation of Vim

You need to unpack both the vim−rt and vim−src packages to install Vim. Both packages will unpack their files into the vim−5.7 directory. This won't overwrite any files from the other package. So it doesn't mattter in which order you do it. Install Vim by running the following commands:

```
root:vim-5.7#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:vim-5.7#   make
root:vim-5.7#   make install
root:vim-5.7#   cd /usr/bin
root:bin#   ln -s vim vi
```

If you are planning on installing the X Window system on your LFS system, you might want to re−compile Vim after you have installed X. Vim comes with a nice GUI version of the editor which requires X and a few other libraries to be installed. For more information read the Vim documentation.

Contents

The Vim package contains the ctags, etags, ex, gview, gvim, rgview, rgvim, rview, rvim, view, vim, vimtutor and xxd programs.

Description

ctags

ctags generate tag files for source code.

---

etags

etags does the same as ctags but it can generate cross reference files which list information about the various source objects found in a set of lanugage files.

---

ex

ex starts vim in Ex mode.

---

gview

gview is the GUI version of view.

gvim

gvim is the GUI version of vim.

rgview

rgview is teh GUI version of rview.

rgvim

rgvim is the GUI version of rvim.

rview

rview is a restricted version of view. No shell commands can be started and Vim can't be suspended.

rvim

rvim is the restricted version of vim. No shell commands can be started and Vim can't be suspended.

view

view starts vim in read–only mode.

vim

vim starts vim in the normal, default way.

vimtutor

vimtutor starts the Vim tutor.

xxd

xxd makes a hexdump or does the reverse.

Installing Sysklogd

Installation of Sysklogd

Edit the `Makefile` file and find this line: *CFLAGS= $(RPM_OPT_FLAGS) −O3 −DSYSV −fomit−frame−pointer −Wall −fno−strength−reduce*. Add the proper −mcpu= and −march= option to this variable and save the file.

Install Sysklogd by running the following commands:

```
root:sysklogd-1.3-31#   make
root:sysklogd-1.3-31#   make install
```

Contents

The Sysklogd package contains the klogd and syslogd programs.

Description

klogd

klogd is a system daemon which intercepts and logs Linux kernel messages.

---

syslogd

Syslogd provides a kind of logging that many modern programs use.Every logged message contains at least a time and a hostname field, normally a program name field, too, but that depends on how trusty the logging program is.

Installing Sysvinit

Installation of Sysvinit

Edit the `src/Makefile` file and edit the CFLAGS variable if you want to add compiler optimizations to this package.

Install Sysvinit by running the following commands:

```
root:sysvinit-2.78#   cd src
root:sysvinit-2.78#   make
root:sysvinit-2.78#   make install
```

Contents

The Sysvinit package contains the pidof, last, lastb, mesg, utmpdump, wall, halt, init, killall5, poweroff, reboot, runlevel, shutdown, sulogin and telinit programs.

Description

pidof

Pidof finds the process id's (pids) of the named programs and prints those id's on standard output.

---

last

last searches back through the file /var/log/wtmp (or the file designated by the –f flag) and displays a list of all users logged in (and out) since that file was created.

---

lastb

lastb is the same as last, except that by default it shows a log of the file /var/log/btmp, which contains all the bad login attempts.

---

mesg

Mesg controls the access to your terminal by others. It's typically used to allow or disallow other users to write to your terminal.

---

utmpdump

utmpdumps prints the content of a file (usually /var/run/utmp) on standard output in a user friendly format.

---

wall

Wall sends a message to everybody logged in with their mesg permission set to yes.

---

halt

Halt notes that the system is being brought down in the file /var/log/wtmp, and then either tells the kernel to halt, reboot or poweroff the system. If halt or reboot is called when the system is not in runlevel 0 or 6, shutdown will be invoked instead (with the flag −h or −r).

---

init

Init is the parent of all processes. Its primary role is to create processes from a script stored in the file /etc/inittab. This file usually has entries which cause init to spawn gettys on each line that users can log in. It also controls autonomous processes required by any particular system.

---

killall5

killall5 is the SystemV killall command. It sends a signal to all processes except the processes in its own session, so it won't kill the shell that is running the script it was called from.

---

poweroff

poweroff is equivalent to shutdown −h −p now. It halts the computer and switches off the computer (when using an APM compliant BIOS and APM is enabled in the kernel).

---

reboot

reboot is equivalent to shutdown −r now. It reboots the computer.

---

runlevel

Runlevel reads the system utmp file (typically /var/run/utmp) to locate the runlevel record, and then prints the previous and current system runlevel on its standard output, separated by a single space.

---

shutdown

shutdown brings the system down in a secure way. All logged−in users are notified that the system is going down, and login is blocked.

---

sulogin

sulogin is invoked by init when the system goes into single user mode (this is done through an entry in /etc/inittab). Init also tries to execute sulogin when it is passed the −b flag from the bootmonitor (eg, LILO).

---

telinit

telinit sends appropriate signals to init, telling it which runlevel to change to.

Installing Tar

Installation of Tar

Install Tar by running the following commands:

```
root:tar-1.13#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:tar-1.13#   make
root:tar-1.13#   make install
root:tar-1.13#   mv /usr/bin/tar /bin
```

If you want to apply the Bzip2 tar patch which gives you the −y option to tar so you can use bzip2 files with tar, first download the patch from http://sourceware.cygnus.com/bzip2/ and apply it by running the following command within the src directory under the tar−1.13 directory:

```
root:src#   patch -i ../../gnutarpatch.txt
```

Contents

The tar package contains the tar and rmt programs.

Description

tar

tar is an archiving program designed to store and extract files from an archive file known as a tarfile.

---

rmt

rmt is a program used by the remote dump and restore programs in manipulating a magnetic tape drive through an interprocess communication connection.

Installing Textutils

Installation of Textutils

Install Textutuils by running the following commands:

```
root:textutils-2.0#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:textutils-2.0#   make
root:textutils-2.0#   make install
root:textutils-2.0#   mv /usr/bin/cat /bin
```

Contents

The Textutils package contains the cat, cksum, comm, split, cut, expand, fmt, fold, head, join, md5sum, nl, od, paste, pr, ptx, sort, split, sum, tac, tail, tr, tsort, unexpand, uniq and wc programs.

Description

cat

cat concatenates file(s) or standard input to standard output.

cksum

cksum prints CRC checksum and byte counts of each specified file.

comm

comm compares two sorted files line by line.

csplit

cplit outputs pieces of a file separated by (a) pattern(s) to files xx01, xx02, ..., and outputs byte counts of each piece to standard output.

cut

cut prints selected parts of lines from specified files to standard output.

expand

expand converts tabs in files to spaces, writing to standard output.

fmt

fmt reformats each paragraph in the specified file(s), writing to standard output.

fold

fold wraps input lines in each specified file (standard input by default), writing to standard output.

head

Print first xx (10 by default) lines of each specified file to standard output.

join

join joins lines of two files on a common field.

md5sum

md5sum prints or checks MD5 checksums.

nl

nl writes each specified file to standard output, with line numbers added.

od

od writes an unambiguous representation, octal bytes by default, of a specified file to standard output.

paste

paste writes lines consisting of the sequentially corresponding lines from each specified file, separated by TABs, to standard output.

pr

pr paginates or columnates files for printing.

ptx

ptx produces a permuted index of file contents.

sort

sort writes sorted concatenation of files to standard output.

split

split outputs fixed–size pieces of an input file to PREFIXaa, PREFIXab, ...

sum

sum prints checksum and block counts for each specified file.

tac

tac writes each specified file to standard output, last line first.

tail

tail print the last xx (10 by default) lines of each specified file to standard output.

tr

tr translates, squeezes, and/or deletes characters from standard input, writing to standard output.

tsort

tsort writes totally ordered lists consistent with the partial ordering in specified files.

unexpand

unexpand converts spaces in each file to tabs, writing to standard output.

uniq

uniq discards all but one of successive identical lines from files or standard input and writes to files or standard output.

wc

wc prints line, word, and byte counts for each specified file, and a total line if more than one file is specified.

Installing Utillinux

Installation of Util−Linux

Before we can install the package we have to edit the MCONFIG file, find and modify the following variables as follows:

HAVE_SLN=yes
HAVE_TSORT=yes

Now find the following lines in the MCONFIG file:

```
ifeq "$(CPU)" "intel"
  OPT=       −pipe −O2 −m486 −fomit−frame−pointer
else
  ifeq "$(CPU)" "arm"
    OPT=     −pipe −O2 −fsigned−char −fomit−frame−pointer
  else
    OPT=     −O2 −fomit−frame−pointer
  endif
endif
```

Modify the proper OPT variable to include the −mcpu= and −march= options. If you modify the first OPT variable, replace *−m486* with the *−mcpu* variable.

Install Util−Linux by running the following commands:

```
root:util-linux-2.10m#   ./configure
root:util-linux-2.10m#   make
root:util-linux-2.10m#   make install
```

Contents

The Util−linux package contains the arch, dmesg, kill, more, mount, umount, agetty, blockdev, cfdisk, ctrlaltdel, elvtune, fdisk, fsck.minix, hwclock, kbdrate, losetup, mkfs, mkfs.bfs, mkfs.minix, mkswap, sfdisk, swapoff, swapon, cal, chkdupexe, col, colcrt, colrm, column, cytune, ddate, fdformat, getopt, hexdump, ipcrm, ipcs, logger, look, mcookie, namei, rename, renice, rev, script, setfdprm, setsid, setterm, ul, whereis, write, ramsize, rdev, readprofile, rootflags, swapdev, tunelp and vidmode programs.

Description

arch

arch prints the machine architecture.

dmesg

dmesg is used to examine or control the kernel ring buffer (boot messages from the kernel).

kill

kill sends a specified signal to the specified process.

more

more is a filter for paging through text one screenful at a time.

mount

mount mounts a filesystem from a device to a directory (mount point).

umount

umount unmounts a mounted filesystem.

agetty

agetty opens a tty port, prompts for a login name and invokes the /bin/login command.

blockdev

No description available.

cfdisk

cfdisk is an libncurses based disk partition table manipulator.

---

ctrlaltdel

ctrlaltdel sets the function of the CTRL+ALT+DEL key combination (hard or soft reset).

---

elvtune

elvtune allows to tune the I/O elevator per blockdevice queue basis.

---

fdisk

fdisk is a disk partition table manipulator.

---

fsck.minix

fsck.minix performs a consistency check for the Linux MINIX filesystem.

---

hwclock

hwclock queries and sets the hardware clock (Also called the RTC or BIOS clock).

---

kbdrate

kbdrate resets the keyboard repeat rate and delay time.

---

losetup

losetup sets up and controls loop devices.

---

mkfs

mkfs builds a Linux filesystem on a device, usually a harddisk partition.

---

mkfs.bfs

mkfs.bfs creates a SCO bfs file system on a device, usually a harddisk partition.

---

mkfs.minix

mkfs.minix creates a Linux MINIX filesystem on a device, usually a harddisk partition.

---

mkswap

mkswap sets up a Linux swap area on a device or in a file.

---

sfdisk

sfdisk is a disk partition table manipulator.

---

swapoff

swapoff disables devices and files for paging an swapping.

---

swapon

swapon enables devices and files for paging and swapping.

---

cal

cal displays a simple calender.

---

chkdupexe

chkdupexe finds duplicate executables.

---

col

col filters reverse line feeds from input.

---

colcrt

colcrt filters nroff output for CRT previewing.

colrm

colrm removes columns from a file.

column

column columnates lists.

cytune

cytune queries and modifies the interruption threshold for the Cyclades driver.

ddate

ddate converts Gregorian dates to Discordian dates.

fdformat

fdformat low−level formats a floppy disk.

getopt

getops parses command options the same way as the getopt C command.

hexdump

hexdump displays specified files, or standard input, in a user specified format (ascii, decimal, hexadecimal, octal).

ipcrm

ipcrm removes a specified resource.

ipcs

ipcs provides information on ipc facilities.

logger

logger makes entries in the system log.

look

look displays lines beginning with a given string.

mcookie

mcookie generates magic cookies for xauth.

namei

namei follows a pathname until a terminal point is found.

rename

rename renames files.

renice

renice alters priority of running processes.

rev

rev reverses lines of a file.

script

script makes typescript of terminal session.

setfdprm

setfdprm sets user−provides floppy disk parameters.

---

setsid

setsid runs programs in a new session.

---

setterm

setterm sets terminal attributes.

---

ul

ul reads a file and translates occurences of underscores to the sequence which indicates underlining for the terminal in use.

---

whereis

whereis locates a binary, source and manual page for a command.

---

write

write sends a message to another user.

---

ramsize

ramsize queries and sets RAM disk size.

---

rdev

rdev queries and sets image root device, swap device, RAM disk size, or video mode.

---

readprofile

readprofile reads kernel profiling information.

---

rootflags

rootflags queries and sets extra information used when mounting root.

---

swapdev

swapdev queries and sets swap device.

---

tunelp

tunelp sets various paramters for the lp device.

---

vidmode

vidmode queries and sets the video mode.

Installation of Pmac−utils

Install Pmac−utils by running the following commands:

```
root:pmac-utils-1.1.1#    make clock
root:pmac-utils-1.1.1#    cp clock /sbin
root:pmac-utils-1.1.1#    rm /sbin/hwclock
```

Create a new file `/sbin/hwclock` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /sbin/hwclock

/sbin/clock -s

# End /sbin/hwclock
```

Set the right permissions by running the following command:

```
root:~#   chmod 755 /sbin/hwclock
```

Installing Man−pages

Installation of Man−pages

Install Man−pages by running the following commands:

```
root:man-pages-1.30#   cp -av man2 man3 man4 \
> man5 man6 man7 /usr/share/man
root:man-pages-1.30#   cd man8
root:man8#   cp tzselect.8 zdump.8 \
> zic.8 /usr/share/man/man8
```

Contents

The Man−pages package contains various manual pages that don't come with the packages.

Description

Examples of provided manual pages are the manual pages describing all the C and C++ functions, few important /dev/ files and more.

Removing old NSS library files

If you have copied the NSS Library files from your normal Linux system to the LFS system (because your normal system runs glibc–2.0) it's time to remove them now by running:

```
root:~#     rm /lib/libnss*.so.1 /lib/libnss*2.0*
```

Configuring essential software

Now that all software is installed, all that we need to do to get a few programs running properly is to create their configuration files.

Configuring Vim

By default Vim runs in vi compatible mode. Some people might like this, but I have a high preference to run vim in vim mode (else I wouldn't have included Vim in this book but the original Vi). Create the `/root/.vimrc` containing the following:

```
" Begin /root/.vimrc

set nocompatible
set bs=2

" End /root/.vimrc
```

Configuring Glibc

We need to create the /etc/nsswitch.conf file. Although glibc should provide defaults when this file is missing or corrupt, it's defaults don't work work well with networking which will be dealt with in a later chapter. Also, our timezone needs to be setup.

Create a new file `/etc/nsswitch.conf` containing the following:

```
# Begin /etc/nsswitch.conf

passwd: files
group: files
shadow: files

hosts: files dns
networks: files

protocols: db files
services: db files
ethers: db files
rpc: db files

netgroup: db files
```

End /etc/nsswitch.conf

Run the **tzselect** script and answer the questions regarding your timezone. When you're done, the script will give you the location of the timezone file you need.

Create the `/etc/localtime` symlink by running:

```
root:~#   cd /etc
root:etc#   rm localtime
root:etc#   ln -s ../usr/share/zoneinfo/<tzselect's output> \
> localtime
```

tzselect's output can be something like *EST5EDT* or *Canada/Eastern*. The symlink you would create with that information would be *ln −s ../usr/share/zoneinfo/EST5EDT localtime* or *ln −s ../usr/share/zoneinfo/Canada/Eastern localtime*

Configuring Dynamic Loader

By default the dynamic loader searches a few default paths for dynamic libraries, so there normally isn't a need for the `/etc/ld.so.conf` file unless you have extra directories in which you want the system to search for paths. The `/usr/local/lib` directory isn't searched through for dynamic libraries by default, so we want to add this path so when you install software you won't be suprised by them not running for some reason.

Create a new file `/etc/ld.so.conf` containing the following:

```
# Begin /etc/ld.so.conf

/lib
/usr/lib
/usr/local/lib

# End /etc/ld.so.conf
```

Although it's not necessary to add the `/lib` and `/usr/lib` directories it doesn't hurt. This way you see right away what's being searched and don't have to remeber the default search paths if you don't want to.

Configuring Sysklogd

Create a new file `/etc/syslog.conf` containing the following:

```
# Begin /etc/syslog.conf

auth,authpriv.* –/var/log/auth.log
*.*;auth,authpriv.none –/var/log/sys.log
daemon.* –/var/log/daemon.log
kern.* –/var/log/kern.log
mail.* –/var/log/mail.log
user.* –/var/log/user.log
*.emerg *

# End /etc/syslog.conf
```

Configuring Shadow Password Suite

This package contains the utilities to modify user's passwords, add new users/groups, delete users/groups and more. I'm not going to explain to you what 'password shadowing' means. You can read all about that in the doc/HOWTO file within the unpacked shadow password suite's source tree. There's one thing you should keep in mind, if you decide to use shadow support, that programs that need to verify passwords (examples are xdm, ftp daemons, pop3 daemons, etc) need to be 'shadow–compliant', eg. they need to be able to work with shadow'ed passwords.

Shadow'ed passwords are not enabled by default. Simply installing the shadow password suite does not enable shadow'ed passwords.

Now is a very good moment to read chapter 5 of the doc/HOWTO file. You can read how you can enable shadow'ed passwords, how to test whether shadowing works and if not, how to disable it again.

Configuring Sysvinit

Create a new file `/etc/inittab` containing the following:

```
# Begin /etc/inittab

id:3:initdefault:

si::sysinit:/etc/init.d/rcS

l0:0:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 0
```

l1:S1:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 1
l2:2:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 2
l3:3:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 3
l4:4:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 4
l5:5:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 5
l6:6:wait:/etc/init.d/rc 6

f1:0:respawn:/sbin/sulogin
f2:6:respawn:/sbin/sulogin

ca:12345:ctrlaltdel:/sbin/shutdown –t1 –a –r now

su:S1:respawn:/sbin/sulogin
1:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty /dev/tty1 9600
2:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty /dev/tty2 9600
3:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty /dev/tty3 9600
4:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty /dev/tty4 9600
5:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty /dev/tty5 9600
6:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty /dev/tty6 9600

End /etc/inittab

Creating the /var/run/utmp,wtmp and btmp files

Programs like login, shutdown, uptime and others want to read from and write to the /var/run/utmp /var/run/btmp and /var/run/wtmp. These files contain information about who is currently logged in. It also contains information on when the computer was last booted and shutdown and a record of the bad login attemps.

Create these files with their proper permissions by running the following commands:

```
root:~#   cd /var/run
root:run#   touch btmp utmp wtmp
root:run#   chmod 0644 btmp utmp wtmp
```

Creating root password

Choose a password for user root and create it by running the following command:

```
root:~# passwd root
```

Chapter 12. Creating system boot scripts

What is being done here

This chapter will create the necessary scripts that are run at boottime. These scripts perform tasks such as remounting the root file system mounted read−only by the kernel into read−write mode, activiating the swap partition(s), running a check on the root file system to make sure it's intact and starting the daemons that the system uses.

Creating directories

We need to start by creating a few extra directories that are used by the boot scripts. Create these directories by running:

```
root:~#   cd /etc
root:etc#   mkdir sysconfig rc0.d rc1.d rc2.d rc3.d
root:etc#   mkdir rc4.d rc5.d rc6.d init.d rcS.d
```

Creating the rc script

The first main bootscript is the `/etc/init.d/rc` script. Create a new file `/etc/init.d/rc` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/rc
#
# By Jason Pearce  – jason.pearce@linux.org
# Modified by Gerard Beekmans – gerard@linuxfromscratch.org

source /etc/init.d/functions

# Un–comment the following for debugging.
# debug=echo

#
# Start script or program.
#
startup() {
case "$1" in
        *.sh)
                $debug sh "$@"
                ;;
        *)
                $debug "$@"
                ;;
esac
}

# Ignore CTRL–C only in this shell, so we can interrupt subprocesses.
trap ":" INT QUIT TSTP

# Set onlcr to avoid staircase effect.
stty onlcr 0>&1

# Now find out what the current and what the previous runlevel are.
runlevel=$RUNLEVEL
# Get first argument. Set new runlevel to this argument.

[ "$1" != "" ] && runlevel=$1
if [ "$runlevel" = "" ]
then
        echo "Usage: $0 <runlevel>" >&2
        exit 1
fi

previous=$PREVLEVEL
```

```
[ "$previous" = "" ] && previous=N

export runlevel previous

# Is there an rc directory for this new runlevel?

if [ −d /etc/rc$runlevel.d ]
then
        # First, run the KILL scripts for this runlevel.
        if [ $previous != N ]
        then
                for i in /etc/rc$runlevel.d/K*
                do
                [ ! −f $i ] && continue

                        suffix=${i#/etc/rc$runlevel.d/K[0−9][0−9]}
                        previous_start=/etc/rc$previous.d/S[0−9][0−9]$suffix
                        sysinit_start=/etc/rcS.d/S[0−9][0−9]$suffix

                        # Stop the service if there is a start script
                        # in the previous run level.
                        [ ! −f $previous_start ] &&
                        [ ! −f $sysinit_start] && continue

                        startup $i stop
                        if [ $? != 0 ]
                        then
        echo −n "You should not read this error message. It means "
        echo "that an unforseen error "
        echo −n "took place and subscript $i exited with "
        echo "return value $? for an unknown "
        echo −n "reason. If you're able to trace this error down to "
        echo "a bug in one of the files "
        echo "provided by this book, please be so kind to inform us at "
        echo "lfs−discuss@linuxfromscratch.org"
                        fi

                done
        fi

        # Now run the START scripts for this runlevel.
        for i in /etc/rc$runlevel.d/S*
        do
                [ ! −f $i ] && continue

                if [ $previous != N ]
        then
                        # Find start script in previous runlevel and
                        # stop script in this runlevel.
                        suffix=${i#/etc/rc$runlevel.d/S[0−9][0−9]}
                        stop=/etc/rc$runlevel.d/K[0−9][0−9]$suffix
```

```
                previous_start=/etc/rc$previous.d/S[0−9][0−9]$suffix

                # If there is a start script in the previous
                # level
                # and _no_ stop script in this level, we don't
                # have to re−start the service.
                [ −f $previous_start ] && [ ! −f $stop ] &&
                continue
            fi

            case "$runlevel" in
                0|6)
                    startup $i stop
if [ $? != 0 ]
then
        echo −n "You should not read this error message. It means "
        echo "that an unforseen error "
        echo −n "took place and subscript $i exited with "
        echo "return value $? for an unknown "
        echo −n "reason. If you're able to trace this error down to "
        echo "a bug in one of the files "
        echo "provided by this book, please be so kind to inform us at "
        echo "lfs−discuss@linuxfromscratch.org"
                    fi
                    ;;
                *)
                    startup $i start
                    if [ $? != 0 ]
                    then
        echo −n "You should not read this error message. It means "
        echo "that an unforseen error "
        echo −n "took place and subscript $i exited with "
        echo "return value $? for an unknown "
        echo −n "reason. If you're able to trace this error down to "
        echo "a bug in one of the files "
        echo "provided by this book, please be so kind to inform us at "
        echo "lfs−discuss@linuxfromscratch.org"
                    fi
                    ;;
            esac
        done
fi

# End /etc/init.d/rc
```

Creating the rcS script

The second main bootscript is the `rcS` script. Create a new file `/etc/init.d/rcS` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/rcS

runlevel=S
prevlevel=N
umask 022
export runlevel prevlevel

trap ":" INT QUIT TSTP

for i in /etc/rcS.d/S??*
do
        [ ! -f  "$i" ] && continue;
                $i start
done

# End /etc/init.d/rcS
```

Creating the functions script

Create a new file `/etc/init.d/functions` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/functions

COL=70
SET_COL="echo –en \\033[${COL}G"
NORMAL="echo –en \\033[0;39m"
SUCCESS="echo –en \\033[1;32m"
FAILURE="echo –en \\033[1;31m"

evaluate_retval()
{
	if [ $? = 0 ]
	then
		print_status success
	else
		print_status failure
	fi
}

print_status()
{
	if [ $# = 0 ]
	then
		echo "Usage: print_status {success|failure}"
		exit 1
	fi

	case "$1" in
		success)
			$SET_COL
			echo –n "[  "
			$SUCCESS
			echo –n "OK"
			$NORMAL
			echo "  ]"
			echo –en "\r"
			;;
		failure)
			$SET_COL
			echo –n "["
			$FAILURE
			echo –n "FAILED"
			$NORMAL
			echo –n "]"
```

```
                echo -en "\r"
                ;;
        esac

}

loadproc()
{
        if [ $# = 0 ]
        then
                echo "Usage: loadproc {program}"
                exit 1
        fi

        base=`basename $1`

        pidlist=`pidof -o $$ -o $PPID -o %PPID -x $base`

        pid=""

        for apid in $pidlist
        do
                if [ -d /proc/$apid ]
                then
                        pid="$pid $apid"
                fi
        done

        if [ ! -n "$pid" ]
        then
                $*
                evaluate_retval
        else
                print_status failure
        fi

}

killproc()
{

        if [ $# = 0 ]
        then
                echo "Usage: killproc {program} [signal]"
                exit 1
        fi

        base=`basename $1`

        if [ "$2" != "" ]
        then
```

```
        killlevel=$2
    else
        nolevel=1
    fi

    pidlist=`pidof -o $$ -o $PPID -o %PPID -x $base`

    pid=""

    for apid in $pidlist
    do
        if [ -d /proc/$apid ]
        then
            pid="$pid $apid"
        fi
    done

    if [ -n "$pid" ]
    then
        if [ "$nolevel" = 1 ]
        then
            kill -TERM $pid
            if ps h $pid >/dev/null 2>&1
            then
                kill -KILL $pid
            fi
            ps h $pid >/dev/null 2>&1
            if [ $? = 0 ]
            then
                print_status failure
            else
                rm -f /var/run/$base.pid
                print_status success
            fi
        else
            kill $killlevel $pid
            ps h $pid >/dev/null 2>&1
            if [ $? = 0 ]
            then
                print_status failure
            else
                rm -f /var/run/$base.pid
                print_status success
            fi
        fi
    else
        print_status failure
    fi
}

reloadproc()
```

```
{
        if [ $# = 0 ]
        then
                echo "Usage: reloadproc {program} [signal]"
                exit 1
        fi

        base=`basename $1`

        if [ -n "$2" ]
        then
                killlevel=$2
        else
                nolevel=1
        fi

        pidlist=`pidof -o $$ -o $PPID -o %PPID -x $base`

        pid=""

        for apid in $pidlist
        do
                if [ -d /proc/$apid ]
                then
                        pid="$pid $apid"
                fi
        done

        if [ -n "$pid" ]
        then
                if [ "$nolevel" = 1 ]
                then
                        kill -SIGHUP $pid
                        evaluate_retval
                else
                        kill $killlevel $pid
                        evaluate_retval
                fi
        else
                print_status failure
        fi
}

statusproc()
{
        if [ $# = 0 ]
        then
                echo "Usage: status {program}"
                return 1
        fi
```

```
        pid=`pidof -o $$ -o $PPID -o %PPID -x $1`
        if [ -n "$pid" ]
        then
                echo "$1 running with Process ID $pid"
                return 0
        fi

        if [ -f /var/run/$1.pid ]
        then
                pid=`head -1 /var/run/$1.pid`
                if [ -n "$pid" ]
                then
                        echo "$1 not running but /var/run/$1.pid exists"
                        return 1
                fi
        fi

}

# End /etc/init.d/functions
```

Creating the checkfs script

Create a new file /etc/init.d/checkfs containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/checkfs

source /etc/init.d/functions

echo −n "Activating swap..."
/sbin/swapon −a
evaluate_retval

if [ −f /fastboot ]
then
        echo "Fast boot, no file system check"
else
        /bin/mount −n −o remount,ro /
        if [ $? = 0 ]
        then
                if [ −f /forcefsck ]
                then
                        echo −n "/forcefsck exists, forcing "
                        echo "file system check"
                        force="−f"
                else
                        force=""
                fi

                echo "Checking file systems..."
                /sbin/fsck $force −a −A −C −T

                if [ $? −gt 1 ]
                then
                        $FAILURE
                        echo
                        echo −n "fsck failed. Please repair your file "
                        echo "systems manually by running /sbin/fsck"
                        echo "without the −a option"
                        echo
                        echo −n "Please note that the root file system "
                        echo "is currently mounted in read−only mode."
                        echo
                        echo −n "I will start sulogin now. When you  "
                        echo "logout I will reboot your system."
                        echo
                        $NORMAL
                        /sbin/sulogin
```

```
                /sbin/reboot -f
            else
                print_status success
            fi

        else
            echo -n "Cannot check root file system because it "
            echo "could not be mounted in read-only mode."
        fi
fi

# End /etc/init.d/checkfs
```

Creating the halt script

Create a new file `/etc/init.d/halt` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/halt

/sbin/halt -d -f -i -p

# End /etc/init.d/halt
```

Creating the loadkeys script

You only need to create this script if you don't have a default 101 keys US keyboard layout. Create a new file `/etc/init.d/loadkeys` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/loadkeys

source /etc/init.d/functions

echo -n "Loading keymap..."
/usr/bin/loadkeys -d >/dev/null
evaluate_retval

# End /etc/init.d/loadkeys
```

Creating the mountfs script

Create a new file `/etc/init.d/mountfs` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/mountfs

source /etc/init.d/functions

echo -n "Remounting root file system in read-write mode..."
/bin/mount -n -o remount,rw /
evaluate_retval

echo > /etc/mtab
/bin/mount -f -o remount,rw /

/bin/rm -f /fastboot /forcefsck

echo -n "Mounting other file systems..."
/bin/mount -a
evaluate_retval

# End /etc/init.d/mountfs
```

Creating the reboot script

Create a new file `/etc/init.d/reboot` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/reboot

echo "System reboot in progress..."

/sbin/reboot –d –f –i

# End /etc/init.d/reboot
```

Creating the sendsignals script

Create a new file `/etc/init.d/sendsignals` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/sendsignals

source /etc/init.d/functions

echo −n "Sending all processes the TERM signal..."
/sbin/killall5 −15
evaluate_retval

echo −n "Sending all processes the KILL signal..."
/sbin/killall5 −9
evaluate_retval

# End /etc/init.d/sendsignals
```

Creating the setclock script

Create a new file `/etc/init.d/setclock` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/setclock

evaluate_retval()
{
        if [ $? = 0 ]
        then echo ""
                else
        echo "FAILED"
        fi
}

echo -n "Setting clock..."
/sbin/hwclock
evaluate_retval

# End /etc/init.d/setclock
```

Creating the sysklogd script

Create a new file `/etc/init.d/sysklogd` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/sysklogd

source /etc/init.d/functions

case "$1" in
        start)
                echo -n "Starting system log daemon..."
                loadproc /usr/sbin/syslogd -m 0

                echo -n "Starting kernel log daemon..."
                loadproc /usr/sbin/klogd
                ;;

        stop)
                echo -n "Stopping kernel log daemon..."
                killproc klogd

                echo -n "Stopping system log daemon..."
                killproc syslogd
                ;;

        reload)
                echo -n "Reloading system log daemon configuration file..."
                reloadproc syslogd -1
                ;;

        restart)
                $0 stop
                sleep 1
                $0 start
                ;;

        status)
                statusproc /usr/sbin/syslogd
                statusproc /usr/sbin/klogd
                ;;

        *)
                echo "Usage: $0 {start|stop|reload|restart|status}"
                exit 1
        ;;

esac
```

```
# End /etc/init.d/sysklogd
```

Creating the umountfs script

Create a new file `/etc/init.d/umountfs` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/umountfs

source /etc/init.d/functions

echo –n "Deactivating swap..."
/sbin/swapoff –a
evaluate_retval

echo –n "Unmounting file systems..."
/bin/umount –a –r
evaluate_retval

# End /etc/init.d/umountfs
```

Setting up symlinks and permissions

Give these files the proper permissions and create the necessary symlinks by running the following commands:

```
root:~#   cd /etc/init.d
root:init.d#   chmod 754 rc rcS functions checkfs halt
loadkeys mountfs
root:init.d#   chmod 754 reboot sendsignals setclock sysklogd
umountfs
root:init.d#   cd ../rc0.d
root:rc0.d#   ln -s ../init.d/sysklogd K90sysklogd
root:rc0.d#   ln -s ../init.d/sendsignals S80sendsignals
root:rc0.d#   ln -s ../init.d/umountfs S90umountfs
root:rc0.d#   ln -s ../init.d/halt S99halt
root:rc0.d#   cd ../rc6.d
root:rc6.d#   ln -s ../init.d/sysklogd K90sysklogd
root:rc6.d#   ln -s ../init.d/sendsignals S80sendsignals
root:rc6.d#   ln -s ../init.d/umountfs S90umountfs
root:rc6.d#   ln -s ../init.d/reboot S99reboot
root:rc6.d#   cd ../rcS.d
root:rcS.d#   ln -s ../init.d/setclock S01setclock
root:rcS.d#   ln -s ../init.d/checkfs S05checkfs
root:rcS.d#   ln -s ../init.d/mountfs S10mountfs
root:rcS.d#   ln -s ../init.d/loadkeys S20loadkeys
root:rcS.d#   cd ../rc1.d
root:rc1.d#   ln -s ../init.d/sysklogd K90sysklogd
root:rc1.d#   cd ../rc2.d
root:rc2.d#   ln -s ../init.d/sysklogd S03sysklogd
root:rc2.d#    cd ../rc3.d
root:rc3.d#    ln -s ../init.d/sysklogd S03sysklogd
root:rc3.d#    cd ../rc4.d
root:rc4.d#    ln -s ../init.d/sysklogd S03sysklogd
root:rc4.d#    cd ../rc5.d
root:rc5.d#    ln -s ../init.d/sysklogd S03sysklogd
```

Creating the /etc/fstab file

In order for certain programs to be able to determine where certain partitions are supposed to be mounted by default, the /etc/fstab file is used. Create a new file `/etc/fstab` containing the following:

```
# Begin /etc/fstab

/dev/<LFS−partition designation> / ext2 defaults 1 1
/dev/<swap−partition designation> none swap sw 0 0
proc /proc proc defaults 0 0

# End /etc/fstab
```

Replace <LFS−partition designation> and <swap−partition designation> with the appropriate devices (/dev/hda5 and /dev/hda6 in my case).

Chapter 13. Setting up basic networking

Introduction

This chapter will setup basic networking. Although you might not be connected to a network, Linux software uses network functions anyway. We'll be installing at least the local loopback device and a network card as well if applicable. Also the proper bootscripts will be created so that networking will be enabled during boot time.

Installing network software

Installing Netkit−base

Install Netkit−base by running the following commands:

```
root:netkit-base-0.17#   ./configure --prefix=/usr
root:netkit-base-0.17#   make
root:netkit-base-0.17#   make install
root:netkit-base-0.17#   cd etc.sample
root:etc.sample#   cp services protocols /etc
```

There are other files in the `etc.sample` directory which might be of interest to you.

Installing Net−tools

Edit the `Makefile` file and edit the CFLAGS variable if you want to add compiler optimzations.

Install Net−tools by running the following commands:

```
root:net-tools-1.57#   make
root:net-tools-1.57#   make install
```

You might have noticed that we don't use the compiler optimizations for this package. The reason is that overriding the CFLAGS variable causes compilation problems. You would have to edit the Makefile file and add the proper values to the CFLAGS variable and then compile the package. If you want to do that it's up to you. I don't think it's worth the trouble though. The programs in this package aren't that big that optimization would have any noticable effect on the performance.

Creating network boot scripts

Creating the /etc/init.d/localnet bootscript

Create a new file `/etc/init.d/localnet` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/localnet

source /etc/init.d/functions
source /etc/sysconfig/network

case "$1" in
        start)
                echo -n "Bringing up the loopback interface..."
                /sbin/ifconfig lo 127.0.0.1
                evaluate_retval

                echo -n "Setting up hostname..."
                /bin/hostname $HOSTNAME
                evaluate_retval
                ;;

        stop)
                echo -n "Bringing down the loopback interface..."
                /sbin/ifconfig lo down
                evaluate_retval
                ;;

        *)
                echo "Usage: $0: {start|stop}"
                exit 1
                ;;
esac

# End /etc/init.d/localnet
```

Setting up permissions and symlink

Set the proper file permissions and create the necessary symlink by running the following commands:

```
root:~#    cd /etc/init.d
```

```
root:init.d#    chmod 754 /etc/init.d/localnet
root:init.d#    cd ../rcS.d
root:rcS.d#    ln -s ../init.d/localnet S03localnet
```

Creating the /etc/sysconfig/network file

Create a new file `/etc/sysconfig/network` and put the hostname in it by running:

```
root:~#    echo "HOSTNAME=lfs" > /etc/sysconfig/network
```

Replace "lfs" by the name you wish to call your computer. Please not that you should not enter the FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name) here. That information will be put in the `/etc/hosts` file later.

Creating the /etc/hosts file

If you want to configure a network card, you have to decide on the IP–address, FQDN and possible aliases for use in the /etc/hosts file. An example is:

```
<my-IP> myhost.mydomain.org aliases
```

Make sure the IP–address is in the private network IP–address range. Valid ranges are:

```
Class Networks
A     10.0.0.0
B     172.16.0.0 through 172.31.0.0
C     192.168.0.0 through 192.168.255.0
```

A valid IP address could be 192.168.1.1. A valid FQDN for this IP could be www.linuxfromscratch.org

If you're not going to use a network card, you still need to come up with a FQDN. This is necessary for programs like Sendmail to operate correctly (in fact; Sendmail won't run when it can't determine the FQDN).

If you don't configure a network card, create a new file `/etc/hosts` containing:

```
# Begin /etc/hosts (no network card version)

127.0.0.1 www.mydomain.com <value of HOSTNAME> localhost

# End /etc/hosts (no network card version)
```

If you do configure a network card, create a new file `/etc/hosts` containing:

```
# Begin /etc/hosts (network card version)

127.0.0.1 localhost.localdomain localhost
192.168.1.1 www.mydomain.org <value of HOSTNAME>

# End /etc/hosts (network card version)
```

Of course, change the 192.168.1.1 and www.mydomain.org to your own liking (or requirements if you are assigned an IP−address by a network/system administrator and you plan on connecting this machine to that network).

Creating the /etc/init.d/ethnet script

This section only applies if you are going to configure a network card. If you're not, skip this section.

Create a new file `/etc/init.d/ethnet` containing the following:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Begin /etc/init.d/ethnet

source /etc/init.d/functions
source /etc/sysconfig/network

case "$1" in
        start)
                echo −n "Bringing up the eth0 interface..."
        /sbin/ifconfig eth0 $IP broadcast $BROADCAST netmask $NETMASK
                evaluate_retval
                ;;

        stop)
                echo −n "Bringing down the eth0 interface..."
                /sbin/ifconfig eth0 down
```

```
        evaluate_retval
        ;;

    *)
        echo "Usage: $0 {start|stop}"
        exit 1
        ;;
esac

# End /etc/init.d/ethnet
```

Editing the /etc/sysconfig/network file

Edit the `/etc/sysconfig/network` file and add the following lines to it. Don't remove the HOSTNAME= line.

```
IP=192.168.1.1
NETMASK=255.255.255.0
BROADCAST=192.168.1.255
```

Chagne the IP, NETMASK and BROADCAST values to match your network setup.

Setting up permissions and symlink

Set the proper file permissions and create the necessary symlink by running the following commands:

```
root:~#    cd /etc/init.d
root:init.d#    chmod 754 /etc/init.d/ethnet
root:init.d#   cd ../rc1.d
root:rc1.d#   ln -s ../init.d/ethnet K90ethnet
root:rc1.d#   cd ../rc2.d
root:rc2.d#   ln -s ../init.d/ethnet K90ethnet
root:rc2.d#    cd ../rc3.d
root:rc3.d#    ln -s ../init.d/ethnet S10ethnet
root:rc3.d#    cd ../rc4.d
root:rc4.d#    ln -s ../init.d/ethnet S10ethnet
root:rc4.d#    cd ../rc5.d
root:rc5.d#    ln -s ../init.d/ethnet S10ethnet
```

Chapter 14. Making the LFS system bootable

Introduction

This chapter will make LFS bootable. This chapter deals with building a new kernel for our new LFS system and moving the kernel to the MacOS side so we can boot the LFS system.

Installing a kernel

A kernel is the heart of a Linux system. We could use the kernel image from our normal system, but we might as well compile a new kernel from the most recent kernel sources available.

Building the kernel involves a few steps: configuring it and compiling it. There are a few ways to configure the kernel. If you don't like the way this book does it, read the `README` file and find out what your other options are. Run the following commands to build the kernel:

If you need to apply the Kernel USB patch, do that by running the following commands:

```
root:~#   cd /usr/src/linux
root:linux#   patch -p1 -i ../usb-2.3.50-1-for-2.2.14.diff.gz
```

The build the actual kernel, run the following commands:

```
root:linux#   make mrproper
root:linux#   make pmac_config
root:linux#   make menuconfig
root:linux#   make dep
root:linux#   make vmlinux
root:linux#   cp System.map /boot
root:linux#   cp vmlinux /boot/lfskernel
```

Updating BootX

Now we have to get /boot/lfskernel to the Mac OS side so we can boot our LFS system. There are a few ways to copy the /boot/lfskernel file to the Linux kernel folder on the Mac OS side.

The easiest way is be to mount a Mac HFS partition under Linux and copy the kernel to that partition in the right folder. The Linux kernel currently does not support the HFS+ partition, do do not attempt to mount a Mac HFS+ (also known as HFS Extended) partition under Linux.

Copy the kernel to your Mac HFS partition by running the following commands:

```
root:~# mkdir /mnt/exchange
root:~# mount -t hfs /dev/sda1 /mnt/exchange
root:~# cp /boot/lfskernel /mnt/exchange
root:~# umount /dev/sda1
```

Of course, replace /dev/sda1 by your Mac partition's designation.

If you can't mount the Mac partition for some reason (for example because it's a HFS+ partition) you'll have to email the kernel to yourself. Use a shell on your normal Linux's system (not the the chroot'ed environment) to obtain the kernel image. Compress it with gzip and attach it to an email. Boot into your MacOS and download the email. You can use the MacGzip application to ungzip the kernel image and move it to the "Linux Kernels" folder under "System Folder". If you don't have MacGzip installed, you can download it from http://macinsearch.com/infomac/cmp/mac-gzip-111.html

Of course, if the kernel is small enough to fit on a floppy disk, and your Mac has a floppy drive, you can transfer it that way. Of if you have a ZIP drive at your disposal, you can transfer it on that medium.

Testing the system

Now that all software has been installed, bootscripts have been created and the local network is setup, it's time for you to reboot your computer and test these new scripts to verify that they actually work. You first want to execute them manually from the /etc/init.d directory so you can fix the most obvious problems (typos, wrong paths and such). When those scripts seem to work just fine manually they should also work during a system start or shutdown. There's only one way to test that. Shutdown your system with shutdown –r now and reboot into LFS. After the reboot you will have a normal login prompt like you have on your normal Linux system (unless you use XDM or some sort of other Display Manger (like KDM – KDE's version of XDM).

IV. Part IV – Appendixes

Table of Contents

A. Package descriptions
B. Resources

Appendix A. Package descriptions

Introduction

This appendix describes the following aspect of each and every package that is installed in this book:

- What every package contains
- What every program from a package does

The packages are listed in the same order as they are installed in chapter 5 (Intel system) or chapter 11 (PPC systems).

Most information about these packages (especially the descriptions of it) come from the man pages from those packages. I'm not going to print the entire man page, just the core elements to make you understand what a program does. If you want to know full details on a program, I suggest you start by reading the complete man page in addition to this appendix.

You will also find that certain packages are documented more in depth than others. The reason is that I just happen to know more about certain packages than I know about others. If you have anything to add on the following descriptions, please don't hesitate to email me. This list is going to contain an in depth description of every package installed, but I can't do this on my own. I have had help from various people but more help is needed.

Please note that currently only what a package does is described and not why you need to install it. That will be added later.

Glibc

Contents

The Glibc package contains the GNU C Library.

Description

The C Library is a collection of commonly used functions in programs. This way a programmer doens't need to create his own functions for every single task. The most common things like writing a string to your screen are already present and at the disposal of the programmer.

The C library (actually almost every library) come in two flavours: dynamic ones and static ones. In short when a program uses a static C library, the code from the C library will be copied into the executable file. When a program uses a dynamic library, that executable will not contain the code from the C library, but instead a routine that loads the functions from the library at the time the program is run. This means a significant decrease in the file size of a program. If you don't understand this concept, you better read the documentation that comes with the C Library as it is too complicated to explain here in one or two lines.

Linux kernel

Contents

The Linux kernel package contains the Linux kernel.

Description

The Linux kernel is at the core of every Linux system. It's what makes Linux tick. When you turn on your computer and boot a Linux system, the very first piece of Linux software that gets loaded is the kernel. The kernel initializes the system's hardware components such as serial ports, parallel ports, sound cards, network cards, IDE controllers, SCSI controllers and a lot more. In a nutshell the kernel makes the hardware available so that the software can run.

Ed

Contents

The Ed package contains the ed program.

Description

Ed is a line−oriented text editor. It is used to create, display, modify and otherwise manipulate text files.

Patch

Contents

The Patch package contains the patch program.

Description

The patch program modifies a file according to a patch file. A patch file usually is a list created by the diff program that contains instructions on how an original file needs to be modified. Patch is used a lot for source code patches since it saves time and space. Imagine you have a package that is 1MB in size. The next version of that package only has changes in two files of the first version. You can ship an entirely new package of 1MB or provide a patch file of 1KB which will update the first version to make it identical to the second version. So if you have downloaded the first version already, a patch file can save you a second large download.

GCC

Contents

The GCC package contains compilers, preprocessors and the GNU C++ Library.

Description

Compiler

A compiler translates source code in text format to a format that a computer understands. After a source code file is compiled into an object file, a linker will create an executable file from one or more of these compiler generated object files.

Pre−processor

A pre−processor pre−processes a source file, such as including the contents of header files into the source file. You generally don't do this yourself to save yourself a lot of time. You just insert a line like #include <filename>. The pre−processor file insert the contents of that file into the source file. That's one of the things a pre−processor does.

C++ Library

The C++ library is used by C++ programs. The C++ library contains functions that are frequently used in C++ programs. This way the programmer doesn't have to write certain functions (such as writing a string of text to the screen) from scratch every time he creates a program.

Bison

Contents

The Bison package contains the bison program.

Description

Bison is a parser generator, a replacement for YACC. YACC stands for Yet Another Compiler Compiler. What is Bison then? It is a program that generates a program that analyses the structure of a textfile. Instead of writing the actual program you specify how things should be connected and with those rules a program is constructed that analyses the textfile.

There are alot of examples where structure is needed and one of them is the calculator.

Given the string :

```
1 + 2 * 3
```

You can easily come to the result 7. Why ? Because of the structure. You know how to interpretet the string. The computer doesn't know that and Bison is a tool to help it understand by presenting the string in the following way to the compiler:

```
    +
   / \
  *   1
 / \
2   3
```

You start at the bottom of a tree and you come across the numbers 2 and 3 which are joined by the multiplication symbol, so the computers multiplies 2 and 3. The result of that multiplication is remembered and the next thing that the computer sees is the result of 2*3 and the number 1 which are joined by the add symbol. Adding 1 to the previous result makes 7. In calculating the most complex calculations can be broken down in this tree format and the computer just starts at the bottom and works it's way up to the top and comes with the correct answer. Of course, Bison isn't only used for calculators alone.

Mawk

Contents

The Mawk package contains the mawk program.

Description

gawk

Mawk is an interpreter for the AWK Programming Language. The AWK language is useful for manipulation of data files, text retrieval and processing, and for prototyping and experimenting with algorithms.

Findutils

Contents

The Findutils package contains the find, locate, updatedb and xargs programs.

Description

Find

The find program searches for files in a directory hierarchy which match a certain criteria. If no criteria is given, it lists all files in the current directory and it's subdirectories.

Locate

Locate scans a database which contain all files and directories on a filesystem. This program lists the files and directories in this database matching a certain criteria. If you're looking for a file this program will scan the database and tell you exactly where the files you requested are located. This only makes sense if your locate database is fairly up−to−date else it will provide you with out−of−date information.

Updatedb

The updatedb program updates the locate database. It scans the entire file system (including other file system that are currently mounted unless you specify it not to) and puts every directory and file it finds into the database that's used by the locate program which retrieves this information. It's a good practice to update this database once a day so that you are ensured of a database that is up−to−date.

Xargs

The xargs command applies a command to a list of files. If you need to perform the same command on multiple files, you can create a file that contains all these files (one per line) and use xargs to perform that command on the list.

Ncurses

Contents

The Ncurses package contains the ncurses, panel, menu and form libraries. It also contains the tic, infocmp, clear, tput, toe and tset programs.

Description

The libraries

The libraries that make up the Ncurses library are used to display text (often in a fancy way) on your screen. An example where ncurses is used is in the kernel's "make menuconfig" process. The libraries contain routines to create panels, menu's, form and general text display routines.

Tic

Tic is the terminfo entry−description compiler. The program translates a terminfo file from source format into the binary format for use with the ncurses library routines. Terminfo files contain information about the capabilities of your terminal.

Infocmp

The infocmp program can be used to compare a binary terminfo entry with other terminfo entries, rewrite a terminfo description to take advantage of the use= terminfo field, or print out a terminfo description from the binary file (term) in a variety of formats (the opposite of what tic does).

---

clear

The clear program clears your screen if this is possible. It looks in the environment for the terminal type and then in the terminfo database to figure out how to clear the screen.

---

tput

The tput program uses the terminfo database to make the values of terminal−dependent capabilities and information available to the shell, to initialize or reset the terminal, or return the long name of the requested terminal type.

---

toe

The toe program lists all available terminal types by primary name with descriptions.

tset

The Tset program initializes terminals so they can be used, but it's not widely used anymore. It's provided for 4.4BSD compatibility.

Less

Contents

The Less package contains the less program

Description

The less program is a file pager (or text viewer). It displays the contents of a file with the ability to scroll. Less is an improvement on the common pager called "more". Less has the ability to scroll backwards through files as well and it doesn't need to read the entire file when it starts, which makes it faster when you are reading large files.

Groff

Contents

The Groff packages contains the addftinfo, afmtodit, eqn, grodvi, groff, grog, grohtml, grolj4, grops, grotty, hpftodit, indxbib, lkbib, lookbib, neqn, nroff, pfbtops, pic, psbb, refer, soelim, tbl, tfmtodit and troff programs.

Description

addftinfo

addftinfo reads a troff font file and adds some additional font−metric information that is used by the groff system.

---

afmtodit

afmtodit creates a font file for use with groff and grops.

---

eqn

eqn compiles descriptions of equations embedded within troff input files into commands that are understood by troff.

---

grodvi

grodvi is a driver for groff that produces TeX dvi format.

---

groff

groff is a front−end to the groff document formatting system. Normally it runs the troff program and a postprocessor appropriate for the selected device.

---

grog

grog reads files and guesses which of the groff options −e, −man, −me, −mm, −ms, −p, −s, and −t are required for printing files, and prints the groff command including those options on the standard output.

---

grohtml

grohtml translates the output of GNU troff to html

grolj4

grolj4 is a driver for groff that produces output in PCL5 format suitable for an HP Laserjet 4 printer.

grops

grops translates the output of GNU troff to PostScript.

grotty

grotty translates the output of GNU troff into a form suitable for typewriter−like devices.

hpftodit

hpftodit creates a font file for use with groff −Tlj4 from an HP tagged font metric file.

indxbib

indxbib makes an inverted index for the bibliographic databases a specified file for use with refer, lookbib, and lkbib.

lkbib

lkbib searches bibliographic databases for references that contain specified keys and prints any references found on the standard output.

lookbib

lookbib prints a prompt on the standard error (unless the standard input is not a terminal), reads from the standard input a line containing a set of keywords, searches the bibliographic databases in a specified file for references containing those keywords, prints any references found on the standard output, and repeats this process until the end of input.

neqn

It is currently not known what neqn is and what it does.

---

nroff

The nroff script emulates the nroff command using groff.

---

pfbtops

pfbtops translates a PostScript font in .pfb format to ASCII.

---

pic

pic compiles descriptions of pictures embedded within troff or TeX input files into commands that are understood by TeX or troff.

---

psbb

psbb reads a file which should be a PostScript document conforming to the Document Structuring conventions and looks for a %%BoundingBox comment.

---

refer

refer copies the contents of a file to the standard output, except that lines between .[and .] are interpreted as citations, and lines between .R1 and .R2 are interpreted as commands about how citations are to be processed.

---

soelim

soelim reads files and replaces lines of the form *.so file* by the contents of *file*.

---

tbl

tbl compiles descriptions of tables embedded within troff input files into commands that are understood by troff.

---

tfmtodit

tfmtodit creates a font file for use with **`groff -Tdvi`**

---

troff

troff is highly compatible with Unix troff. Usually it should be invoked using the groff command, which will also run preprocessors and postprocessors in the appropriate order and with the appropriate options.

Man

Contents

The Man package contains the man, apropos whatis and makewhatis programs.

Description

man

man formats and displays the on−line manual pages.

---

apropos

apropos searches a set of database files containing short descriptions of system commands for keywords and displays the result on the standard output.

---

whatis

whatis searches a set of database files containing short descriptions of system commands for keywords and displays the result on the standard output. Only complete word matches are displayed.

---

makewhatis

makewhatis reads all the manual pages contained in given sections of manpath or the preformatted pages contained in the given sections of catpath. For each page, it writes a line in the whatis database; each line consists of the name of the page and a short description, separated by a dash. The description is extracted using the content of the NAME section of the manual page.

Perl

Contents

The Perl package contains Perl – Practical Extraction and Report Language

Description

Perl combines the features and capabilities of C, awk, sed and sh into one powerful programming language.

M4

Contents

The M4 package contains the M4 processor

Description

M4 is a macro processor. It copies input to output expanding macros as it goes. Macros are either builtin or user−defined and can take any number of arguments. Besides just doing macro expansion m4 has builtin functions for including named files, running UNIX commands, doing integer arithmetic, manipulating text in various ways, recursion, etc. M4 can be used either as a front−end to a compiler or as a macro processor in its own right.

Texinfo

Contents

The Texinfo package contains the info, install−info, makeinfo, texi2dvi and texindex programs

---

Description

info

The info program reads Info documents, usually contained in your /usr/doc/info directory. Info documents are like man(ual) pages, but they tend to be more in depth than just explaining the options to a program.

---

install−info

The install−info program updates the info entries. When you run the info program a list with available topics (ie: available info documents) will be presented. The install−info program is used to maintain this list of available topics. If you decice to remove info files manually, you need to delete the topic in the index file as well. This program is used for that. It also works the other way around when you add info documents.

---

makeinfo

The makeinfo program translates Texinfo source documents into various formats. Available formats are: info files, plain text and HTML.

---

texi2dvi

The texi2dvi program prints Texinfo documents

---

texindex

The texindex program is used to sort Texinfo index files.

Autoconf

Contents

The Autoconf package contains the autoconf, autoheader, autoreconf, autoscan, autoupdate and ifnames programs

---

Description

autoconf

Autoconf is a tool for producing shell scripts that automatically configure software source code packages to adapt to many kinds of UNIX−like systems. The configuration scripts produced by Autoconf are independent of Autoconf when they are run, so their users do not need to have Autoconf.

---

autoheader

The autoheader program can create a template file of C #define statements for configure to use

---

autoreconf

If you have a lot of Autoconf−generated configure scripts, the autoreconf program can save you some work. It runs autoconf (and autoheader, where appropriate) repeatedly to remake the Autoconf configure scripts and configuration header templates in the directory tree rooted at the current directory.

---

autoscan

The autoscan program can help you create a configure.in file for a software package. autoscan examines source files in the directory tree rooted at a directory given as a command line argument, or the current directory if none is given. It searches the source files for common portability problems and creates a file configure.scan which is a preliminary configure.in for that package.

---

autoupdate

The autoupdate program updates a configure.in file that calls Autoconf macros by their old names to use the current macro names.

---

ifnames

ifnames can help when writing a configure.in for a software package. It prints the identifiers that the package already uses in C preprocessor conditionals. If a package has already been set up to have some portability, this program can help you figure out what its configure needs to check for. It may help fill in some gaps in a configure.in generated by autoscan.

Automake

Contents

The Automake package contains the aclocal and automake programs

---

Description

aclocal

Automake includes a number of Autoconf macros which can be used in your package; some of them are actually required by Automake in certain situations. These macros must be defined in your aclocal.m4; otherwise they will not be seen by autoconf.

The aclocal program will automatically generate aclocal.m4 files based on the contents of configure.in. This provides a convenient way to get Automake−provided macros, without having to search around. Also, the aclocal mechanism is extensible for use by other packages.

---

automake

To create all the Makefile.in's for a package, run the automake program in the top level directory, with no arguments. automake will automatically find each appropriate Makefile.am (by scanning configure.in) and generate the corresponding Makefile.in.

Bash

Contents

The Bash package contains the bash program

Description

Bash is the Bourne−Again SHell, which is a widely used command interpreter on Unix systems. Bash is a program that reads from standard input, the keyboard. You type something and the program will evaluate what you have typed and do something with it, like running a program.

Flex

Contents

The Flex package contains the flex program

Description

Flex is a tool for generating programs which regognize patterns in text. Pattern recognition is very useful in many applications. You set up rules what to look for and flex will make a program that looks for those patterns. The reason people use flex is that it is much easier to set up rules for what to look for than to write the actual program that finds the text.

Binutils

Description

The Binutils package contains the ld, as, ar, nm, objcopy, objdump, ranlib, size, strings, strip, c++filt, addr2line and nlmconv programs

Description

ld

ld combines a number of object and archive files, relocates their data and ties up symbol references. Often the last step in building a new compiled program to run is a call to ld.

as

as is primarily intended to assemble the output of the GNU C compiler gcc for use by the linker ld.

ar

The ar program creates, modifies, and extracts from archives. An archive is a single file holding a collection of other files in a structure that makes it possible to retrieve the original individual files (called members of the archive).

nm

nm lists the symbols from object files.

objcopy

objcopy utility copies the contents of an object file to another. objcopy uses the GNU BFD Library to read and write the object files. It can write the destination object file in a format different from that of the source object file.

objdump

objdump displays information about one or more object files. The options control what particular information to display. This information is mostly useful to programmers who are working on the compilation tools, as opposed to programmers who just want their program to compile and work.

ranlib

ranlib generates an index to the contents of an archive, and stores it in the archive. The index lists each symbol defined by a member of an archive that is a relocatable object file.

---

size

size lists the section sizes −−and the total size−− for each of the object files objfile in its argument list. By default, one line of output is generated for each object file or each module in an archive.

---

strings

For each file given, strings prints the printable character sequences that are at least 4 characters long (or the number specified with an option to the program) and are followed by an unprintable character. By default, it only prints the strings from the initialized and loaded sections of object files; for other types of files, it prints the strings from the whole file.

strings is mainly useful for determining the contents of non−text files.

---

strip

strip discards all or specific symbols from object files. The list of object files may include archives. At least one object file must be given. strip modifies the files named in its argument, rather than writing modified copies under different names.

---

c++filt

The C++ language provides function overloading, which means that you can write many functions with the same name (providing each takes parameters of different types). All C++ function names are encoded into a low−level assembly label (this process is known as mangling). The c++filt program does the inverse mapping: it decodes (demangles) low−level names into user−level names so that the linker can keep these overloaded functions from clashing.

---

addr2line

addr2line translates program addresses into file names and line numbers. Given an address and an executable, it uses the debugging information in the executable to figure out which file name and line number are associated with a given address.

---

nlmconv

nlmconv converts relocatable object files into the NetWare Loadable Module files, optionally reading header files for NLM header information.

Bzip2

Contents

The Bzip2 packages contains the bzip2, bunzip2, bzcat and bzip2recover programs.

Description

Bzip2

bzip2 compresses files using the Burrows−Wheeler block sorting text compression algorithm, and Huffman coding. Compression is generally considerably better than that achieved by more conventional LZ77/LZ78−based compressors, and approaches the performance of the PPM family of statistical compressors.

Bunzip2

Bunzip2 decompresses files that are compressed with bzip2.

bzcat

bzcat (or bzip2 −dc) decompresses all specified files to the standard output.

bzip2recover

bzip2recover recovers data from damaged bzip2 files.

Diffutils

Contents

The Diffutils packagec contains the cmp, diff, diff3 and sdiff programs.

Description

cmp and diff

cmp and diff both compare two files and report their differences. Both programs have extra options which compare files in different situations.

---

diff3

The difference between diff and diff3 is that diff comprares 2 files, diff3 compares 3 files.

---

sdiff

sdiff merges two two files and interactively outputs the results.

E2fsprogs

Contents

The e2fsprogs package contains the chattr, lsattr, uuidgen, badblocks, debugfs, dumpe2fs, e2fsck, e2label, fsck, fsck.ext2, mke2fs, mkfs.ext2, mklost+found and tune2fs programs.

Description

chattr

chattr changes the file attributes on a Linux second extended file system.

---

lsattr

lsattr lists the file attributes on a second extended file system.

---

uuidgen

The uuidgen program creates a new universally unique identifier (UUID) using the libuuid library. The new UUID can reasonably be considered unique among all UUIDs created on the local system, and among UUIDs created on other systems in the past and in the future.

---

badblocks

badblocks is used to search for bad blocks on a device (usually a disk partition).

---

debugfs

The debugfs program is a file system debugger. It can be used to examine and change the state of an ext2 file system.

---

dumpe2fs

dumpe2fs prints the super block and blocks group information for the filesystem present on a specified device.

---

e2fsck and fsck.ext2

e2fsck is used to check a Linux second extended file system. fsck.ext2 does the same as e2fsck.

e2label

e2label will display or change the filesystem label on the ext2 filesystem located on the specified device.

fsck

fsck is used to check and optionally repair a Linux file system.

mke2fs and mkfs.ext2

mke2fs is used to create a Linux second extended file system on a device (usually a disk partition). mkfs.ext2 does the same as mke2fs.

mklost+found

mklost+found is used to create a lost+found directory in the current working directory on a Linux second extended file system. mklost+found pre−allocates disk blocks to the directory to make it usable by e2fsck.

tune2fs

tune2fs adjusts tunable filesystem parameters on a Linux second extended filesystem.

File

Contents

The File package contains the file program.

Description

File tests each specified file in an attempt to classify it. There are three sets of tests, performed in this order: filesystem tests, magic number tests, and language tests. The first test that succeeds causes the file type to be printed.

Fileutils

Contents

The Fileutils package contains the chgrp, chmod, chown, cp, dd, df, dir, dircolors, du, install, ln, ls, mkdir, mkfifo, mknod, mv, rm, rmdir, sync, touch and vdir programs.

Description

chgrp

chgrp changes the group ownership of each given file to the named group, which can be either a group name or a numeric group ID.

---

chmod

chmod changes the permissions of each given file according to mode, which can be either a symbolic representation of changes to make, or an octal number representing the bit pattern for the new permissions.

---

chown

chown changes the user and/or group ownership of each given file.

---

cp

cp copies files from one place to another.

---

dd

dd copies a file (from the standard input to the standard output, by default) with a user−selectable blocksize, while optionally performing conversions on it.

---

df

df displays the amount of disk space available on the filesystem containing each file name argument. If no file name is given, the space available on all currently mounted filesystems is shown.

---

ls, dir and vdir

dir and vdir are versions of ls with different default output formats. These programs list each given file or directory name. Directory contents are sorted alphabetically. For ls, files are by default listed in columns, sorted vertically, if the standard output is a terminal; otherwise they are listed one per line. For dir, files are by default listed in columns, sorted vertically. For vdir, files are by default listed in long format.

dircolors

dircolors outputs commands to set the LS_COLOR environment variable. The LS_COLOR variable is use to change the default color scheme used by ls and related utilities.

du

du displays the amount of disk space used by each argument and for each subdirectory of directory arguments.

install

install copies files and sets their permission modes and, if possible, their owner and group.

ln

ln makes hard or soft (symbolic) links between files.

mkdir

mkdir creates directories with a given name.

mkfifo

mkfifo creates a FIFO with each given name.

mknod

mknod creates a FIFO, character special file, or block special file with the given file name.

mv

mv moves files from one directory to another or renames files, depending on the arguments given to mv.

rm

rm removes files or directories.

rmdir

rmdir removes directories, if they are empty.

sync

sync forces changed blocks to disk and updates the super block.

touch

touch changes the access and modification times of each given file to the current time. Files that do not exist are created empty.

Gettext

Contents

The gettext package contains the gettext, gettextize, msgcmp, msgcomm, msgfmt, msgmerge, msgunfmt and xgettext programs.

Description

gettext

The gettext package is used for internationalization (also known as i18n) and for localization (also known as l10n). Programs can be compiled with Native Language Support (NLS) which enable them to output messages in your native language rather than in the default English languge.

Grep

Contents

The grep package contains the egrep, fgrep and grep programs.

Description

egrep

egrep prints lines from files matching an extended regular expression pattern.

fgrep

fgrep prints lines from files matching a list of fixed strings, separated by newlines, any of which is to be matched.

grep

grep prints lines from files matching a basic regular expression pattern.

Gzip

Contents

The Gzip package contains the gunzip, gzexe, gzip, zcat, zcmp, zdiff, zforece, zgrep, zmore and znew programs.

Description

gunzip

gunzip decompresses files that are compressed with gzip.

---

gzexe

gzexe allows you to compress executables in place and have them automatically uncompress and execute when you run them (at a penalty in performance).

---

gzip

gzip reduces the size of the named files using Lempel−Ziv coding (LZ77).

---

zcat

zcat uncompresses either a list of files on the command line or its standard input and writes the uncompressed data on standard output

---

zcmp

zcmp invokes the cmp program on compressed files.

---

zdiff

zdiff invokes the diff program on compressed files.

---

zforce

zforce forces a .gz extension on all gzip files so that gzip will not compress them twice. This can be useful for files with names truncated after a file transfer.

zgrep

zgrep invokes the grep program on compressed files.

zmore

Zmore is a filter which allows examination of compressed or plain text files one screenful at a time on a soft–copy terminal (similar to the more program).

znew

Znew recompresses files from .Z (compress) format to .gz (gzip) format.

Ld.so

Contents

From the Ld.so package we're using the ldconfig and ldd programs.

Description

ldconfig

ldconfig creates the necessary links and cache (for use by the run–time linker, ld.so) to the most recent shared libraries found in the directories specified on the command line, in the file /etc/ld.so.conf, and in the trusted directories (/usr/lib and /lib). ldconfig checks the header and file names of the libraries it encounters when determining which versions should have their links updated.

ldd

ldd prints the shared libraries required by each program or shared library specified on the command line.

Libtool

Contents

The Libtool package contains the libtool and libtoolize programs. It also contains the ltdl library.

Description

libtool

Libtool provides generalized library−building support services.

---

libtoolize

libtoolize provides a standard way to add libtool support to your package.

---

ltdl library

Libtool provides a small library, called `libltdl', that aims at hiding the various difficulties of dlopening libraries from programmers.

Bin86

Contents

The Bin86 contains the as86, as86_encap, ld86, objdump86, nm86 and size86 programs.

Description

as86

as86 is an assembler for the 8086...80386 processors.

---

as86_encap

as86_encap is a shell script to call as86 and convert the created binary into a C file prog.v to be included in or linked with programs like boot block installers.

---

ld86

ld86 understands only the object files produced by the as86 assembler, it can link them into either an impure or a separate I&D executable.

---

objdump86

No description available.

---

nm86

No description available.

---

size86

No description available.

Lilo

Contents

The Lilo package contains the lilo program.

Description

lilo installs the Linux boot loader which is used to start a Linux system.

Make

Contents

The Make package contains the make program.

Description

make determine automatically which pieces of a large program need to be recompiled, and issue the commands to recompile them.

Shellutils

Contents

The Shellutils package contains the basename, chroot, date, dirname, echo, env, expr, factor, false, groups, hostid, hostname, id, logname, nice, nohup, pathchk, pinky, printenv, printf, pwd, seq, sleep, stty, su, tee, test, true, tty, uname, uptime, users, who, whoami and yes programs.

Description

basename

basename strips directory and suffixes from filenames.

---

chroot

chroot runs a command or interactive shell with special root directory.

---

date

date displays the current time in a specified format, or sets the system date.

---

dirname

dirname strips non–directory suffixes from file name.

---

echo

echo displays a line of text.

---

env

env runs a program in a modified environment.

---

expr

expr evaluates expressions.

---

factor

factor prints the prime factors of all specified integer numbers.

---

false

false always exits with a status code indicating failure.

---

groups

groups prints the groups a user is in.

---

hostid

hostid prints the numeric identifier (in hexadecimal) for the current host.

---

hostname

hostname sets or prints the name of the current host system

---

id

id prints the real and effective UIDs and GIDs of a user or the current user.

---

logname

logname prints the current user's login name.

---

nice

nice runs a program with modified scheduling priority.

---

nohup

nohup runs a command immune to hangups, with output to a non−tty

---

pathchk

pathchk checks whether file names are valid or portable.

---

pinky

pinky is a lightweight finger utility which retrieves information about a certain user

---

printenv

printenv prints all or part of the environment.

---

printf

printf formats and print data (the same as the printf C function).

---

pwd

pwd prints the name of the current/working directory

---

seq

seq prints numbers in a certain range with a certain increment.

---

sleep

sleep delays for a specified amount of time.

---

stty

stty changes and prints terminal line settings.

---

su

su runs a shell with substitute user and group IDs

---

tee

tee reads from standard input and write to standard output and files.

---

test

test checks file types and compares values.

---

true

True always exitx with a status code indicating success.

---

tty

tty prints the file name of the terminal connected to standard input.

---

uname

uname prints system information.

---

uptime

uptime tells how long the system has been running.

---

users

users prints the user names of users currently logged in to the current host.

---

who

who shows who is logged on.

---

whoami

whoami prints your effective userid.

---

yes

yes outputs a string repeatedly until killed.

Shadow Password Suite

Contents

The Shadow Password Suite contains the chage, chfn, chsh, expiry, faillog, gpasswd, lastlog, login, newgrp, passwd, sg, su, chpasswd, dpasswd, groupadd, groupdel, groupmod, grpck, grpconv, grpunconv, logoutd, mkpasswd, newusers, pwck, pwconv, pwunconv, useradd, userdel, usermod and vipw programs.

Description

chage

chage changes the number of days between password changes and the date of the last password change.

---

chfn

chfn changes user fullname, office number, office extension, and home phone number information for a user's account.

---

chsh

chsh changes the user login shell.

---

expiry

It's currently unknown what this program is for.

---

faillog

faillog formats the contents of the failure log,/var/log/faillog, and maintains failure counts and limits.

---

gpasswd

gpasswd is used to administer the /etc/group file

---

lastlog

lastlog formats and prints the contents of the last login log, /var/log/lastlog. The login−name, port, and last login time will be printed.

login

login is used to establish a new session with the system.

newgrp

newgrp is used to change the current group ID during a login session.

passwd

passwd changes passwords for user and group accounts.

sg

sg executes command as a different group ID.

su

Change the effective user id and group id to that of a user. This replaces the su programs that's installed from the Shellutils package.

chpasswd

chpasswd reads a file of user name and password pairs from standard input and uses this information to update a group of existing users.

dpasswd

dpasswd adds, deletes, and updates dialup passwords for user login shells.

groupadd

The groupadd command creates a new group account using the values specified on the command line and the default values from the system.

groupdel

The groupdel command modifies the system account files, deleting all entries that refer to group.

---

groupmod

The groupmod command modifies the system account files to reflect the changes that are specified on the command line.

---

grpck

grpck verifies the integrity of the system authentication information.

---

grpconv

grpunconv converts to shadow group files from normal group files.

---

grpunconv

grpunconv converts from shadow group files to normal group files.

---

logoutd

logoutd enforces the login time and port restrictions specified in /etc/porttime.

---

mkpasswd

mkpasswd reads a file in the format given by the flags and converts it to the corresponding database file format.

---

newusers

newusers reads a file of user name and cleartext password pairs and uses this information to update a group of existing users or to create new users.

---

pwck

pwck verifies the integrity of the system authentication information.

---

pwconv

pwconv converts to shadow passwd files from normal passwd files.

pwunconv

pwunconv converts from shadow passwd files to normal files.

useradd

useradd creates a new user or update default new user information.

userdel

userdel modifies the system account files, deleting all entries that refer to a specified login name.

usermod

usermod modifies the system account files to reflect the changes that are specified on the command line.

vipw and vigr

vipw and vigr will edit the files /etc/passwd and /etc/group, respectively. With the −s flag, they will edit the shadow versions of those files, /etc/shadow and /etc/gshadow, respectively.

Modutils

Contents

The Modutils package contains the depmod, genksyms, insmod, insmod_ksymoops_clean, kerneld, kernelversion, ksyms, lsmod, modinfo, modprobe and rmmod programs.

Description

depmod

depmod handles dependency descriptions for loadable kernel modules.

---

genksyms

genksyms reads (on standard input) the output from gcc –E source.c and generates a file containing version information.

---

insmod

insmod installs a loadable module in the running kernel.

---

insmod_ksymoops_clean

insmod_ksymoops_clean deletes saved ksyms and modules not accessed in 2 days.

---

kerneld

kerneld performs kernel action in user space (such as on–demand loading of modules)

---

kernelversion

kernelversion reports the major version of the running kernel.

---

ksyms

ksyms displays exported kernel symbols.

---

lsmod

lsmod shows information about all loaded modules.

---

modinfo

modinfo examines an object file associated with a kernel module and displays any information that it can glean.

---

modprobe

Modprobe uses a Makefile−like dependency file, created by depmod, to automatically load the relevant module(s) from the set of modules available in predefined directory trees.

---

rmmod

rmmod unloads loadable modules from the running kernel.

Procinfo

Contents

The Procinfo package contains the procinfo program.

Description

procinfo gathers some system data from the /proc directory and prints it nicely formatted on the standard output device.

Procps

Contents

The Procps package contains the free, kill, oldps, ps, skill, snice, sysctl, tload, top, uptime, vmstat, w and watch programs.

Description

free

free displays the total amount of free and used physical and swap memory in the system, as well as the shared memory and buffers used by the kernel.

---

kill

kills sends signals to processes.

---

oldps and ps

ps gives a snapshot of the current processes.

---

skill

skill sends signals to process matching a criteria.

---

snice

snice changes the scheduling priority for process matching a criteria.

---

sysctl

sysctl modifies kernel parameters at runtime.

---

tload

tload prints a graph of the current system load average to the specified tty (or the tty of the tload process if none is specified).

---

top

top provides an ongoing look at processor activity in real time.

---

uptime

uptime gives a one line display of the following information: the current time, how long the system has been running, how many users are currently logged on, and the system load averages for the past 1, 5, and 15 minutes.

---

vmstat

vmstat reports information about processes, memory, paging, block IO, traps, and cpu activity.

---

w

w displays information about the users currently on the machine, and their processes.

---

watch

watch runs command repeatedly, displaying its output (the first screenfull).

Vim

Contents

The Vim package contains the ctags, etags, ex, gview, gvim, rgview, rgvim, rview, rvim, view, vim, vimtutor and xxd programs.

Description

ctags

ctags generate tag files for source code.

---

etags

etags does the same as ctags but it can generate cross reference files which list information about the various source objects found in a set of lanugage files.

---

ex

ex starts vim in Ex mode.

---

gview

gview is the GUI version of view.

---

gvim

gvim is the GUI version of vim.

---

rgview

rgview is teh GUI version of rview.

---

rgvim

rgvim is the GUI version of rvim.

---

rview

rview is a restricted version of view. No shell commands can be started and Vim can't be suspended.

rvim

rvim is the restricted version of vim. No shell commands can be started and Vim can't be suspended.

view

view starts vim in read−only mode.

vim

vim starts vim in the normal, default way.

vimtutor

vimtutor starts the Vim tutor.

xxd

xxd makes a hexdump or does the reverse.

Psmisc

Contents

The Psmisc package contains the fuser, killall and pstree programs.

Description

fuser

fuser displays the PIDs of processes using the specified files or file systems.

killall

killall sends a signal to all processes running any of the specified commands.

pstree

pstree shows running processes as a tree.

Sed

Contents

The Sed package contains the sed program.

Description

sed is a stream editor. A stream editor is used to perform basic text transformations on an input stream (a file or input from a pipeline).

Sysklogd

Contents

The Sysklogd package contains the klogd and syslogd programs.

Description

klogd

klogd is a system daemon which intercepts and logs Linux kernel messages.

---

syslogd

Syslogd provides a kind of logging that many modern programs use.Every logged message contains at least a time and a hostname field, normally a program name field, too, but that depends on how trusty the logging program is.

Sysvinit

Contents

The Sysvinit package contains the pidof, last, lastb, mesg, utmpdump, wall, halt, init, killall5, poweroff, reboot, runlevel, shutdown, sulogin and telinit programs.

Description

pidof

Pidof finds the process id's (pids) of the named programs and prints those id's on standard output.

last

last searches back through the file /var/log/wtmp (or the file designated by the –f flag) and displays a list of all users logged in (and out) since that file was created.

lastb

lastb is the same as last, except that by default it shows a log of the file /var/log/btmp, which contains all the bad login attempts.

mesg

Mesg controls the access to your terminal by others. It's typically used to allow or disallow other users to write to your terminal.

utmpdump

utmpdumps prints the content of a file (usually /var/run/utmp) on standard output in a user friendly format.

wall

Wall sends a message to everybody logged in with their mesg permission set to yes.

halt

Halt notes that the system is being brought down in the file /var/log/wtmp, and then either tells the kernel to halt, reboot or poweroff the system. If halt or reboot is called when the system is not in runlevel 0 or 6, shutdown will be invoked instead (with the flag −h or −r).

---

init

Init is the parent of all processes. Its primary role is to create processes from a script stored in the file /etc/inittab. This file usually has entries which cause init to spawn gettys on each line that users can log in. It also controls autonomous processes required by any particular system.

---

killall5

killall5 is the SystemV killall command. It sends a signal to all processes except the processes in its own session, so it won't kill the shell that is running the script it was called from.

---

poweroff

poweroff is equivalent to shutdown −h −p now. It halts the computer and switches off the computer (when using an APM compliant BIOS and APM is enabled in the kernel).

---

reboot

reboot is equivalent to shutdown −r now. It reboots the computer.

---

runlevel

Runlevel reads the system utmp file (typically /var/run/utmp) to locate the runlevel record, and then prints the previous and current system runlevel on its standard output, separated by a single space.

---

shutdown

shutdown brings the system down in a secure way. All logged−in users are notified that the system is going down, and login is blocked.

---

sulogin

sulogin is invoked by init when the system goes into single user mode (this is done through an entry in /etc/inittab). Init also tries to execute sulogin when it is passed the −b flag from the bootmonitor (eg, LILO).

telinit

telinit sends appropriate signals to init, telling it which runlevel to change to.

Tar

Contents

The tar package contains the tar and rmt programs.

Description

tar

tar is an archiving program designed to store and extract files from an archive file known as a tarfile.

---

rmt

rmt is a program used by the remote dump and restore programs in manipulating a magnetic tape drive through an interprocess communication connection.

Textutils

Contents

The Textutils package contains the cat, cksum, comm, split, cut, expand, fmt, fold, head, join, md5sum, nl, od, paste, pr, ptx, sort, split, sum, tac, tail, tr, tsort, unexpand, uniq and wc programs.

Description

cat

cat concatenates file(s) or standard input to standard output.

cksum

cksum prints CRC checksum and byte counts of each specified file.

comm

comm compares two sorted files line by line.

csplit

cplit outputs pieces of a file separated by (a) pattern(s) to files xx01, xx02, ..., and outputs byte counts of each piece to standard output.

cut

cut prints selected parts of lines from specified files to standard output.

expand

expand converts tabs in files to spaces, writing to standard output.

fmt

fmt reformats each paragraph in the specified file(s), writing to standard output.

fold

fold wraps input lines in each specified file (standard input by default), writing to standard output.

head

Print first xx (10 by default) lines of each specified file to standard output.

join

join joins lines of two files on a common field.

md5sum

md5sum prints or checks MD5 checksums.

nl

nl writes each specified file to standard output, with line numbers added.

od

od writes an unambiguous representation, octal bytes by default, of a specified file to standard output.

paste

paste writes lines consisting of the sequentially corresponding lines from each specified file, separated by TABs, to standard output.

pr

pr paginates or columnates files for printing.

ptx

ptx produces a permuted index of file contents.

sort

sort writes sorted concatenation of files to standard output.

---

split

split outputs fixed–size pieces of an input file to PREFIXaa, PREFIXab, ...

---

sum

sum prints checksum and block counts for each specified file.

---

tac

tac writes each specified file to standard output, last line first.

---

tail

tail print the last xx (10 by default) lines of each specified file to standard output.

---

tr

tr translates, squeezes, and/or deletes characters from standard input, writing to standard output.

---

tsort

tsort writes totally ordered lists consistent with the partial ordering in specified files.

---

unexpand

unexpand converts spaces in each file to tabs, writing to standard output.

---

uniq

uniq discards all but one of successive identical lines from files or standard input and writes to files or standard output.

---

wc

wc prints line, word, and byte counts for each specified file, and a total line if more than one file is specified.

Util Linux

Contents

The Util−linux package contains the arch, dmesg, kill, more, mount, umount, agetty, blockdev, cfdisk, ctrlaltdel, elvtune, fdisk, fsck.minix, hwclock, kbdrate, losetup, mkfs, mkfs.bfs, mkfs.minix, mkswap, sfdisk, swapoff, swapon, cal, chkdupexe, col, colcrt, colrm, column, cytune, ddate, fdformat, getopt, hexdump, ipcrm, ipcs, logger, look, mcookie, namei, rename, renice, rev, script, setfdprm, setsid, setterm, ul, whereis, write, ramsize, rdev, readprofile, rootflags, swapdev, tunelp and vidmode programs.

Description

arch

arch prints the machine architecture.

---

dmesg

dmesg is used to examine or control the kernel ring buffer (boot messages from the kernel).

---

kill

kill sends a specified signal to the specified process.

---

more

more is a filter for paging through text one screenful at a time.

---

mount

mount mounts a filesystem from a device to a directory (mount point).

---

umount

umount unmounts a mounted filesystem.

---

agetty

agetty opens a tty port, prompts for a login name and invokes the /bin/login command.

blockdev

No description available.

cfdisk

cfdisk is an libncurses based disk partition table manipulator.

ctrlaltdel

ctrlaltdel sets the function of the CTRL+ALT+DEL key combination (hard or soft reset).

elvtune

elvtune allows to tune the I/O elevator per blockdevice queue basis.

fdisk

fdisk is a disk partition table manipulator.

fsck.minix

fsck.minix performs a consistency check for the Linux MINIX filesystem.

hwclock

hwclock queries and sets the hardware clock (Also called the RTC or BIOS clock).

kbdrate

kbdrate resets the keyboard repeat rate and delay time.

losetup

losetup sets up and controls loop devices.

mkfs

mkfs builds a Linux filesystem on a device, usually a harddisk partition.

mkfs.bfs

mkfs.bfs creates a SCO bfs file system on a device, usually a harddisk partition.

mkfs.minix

mkfs.minix creates a Linux MINIX filesystem on a device, usually a harddisk partition.

mkswap

mkswap sets up a Linux swap area on a device or in a file.

sfdisk

sfdisk is a disk partition table manipulator.

swapoff

swapoff disables devices and files for paging an swapping.

swapon

swapon enables devices and files for paging and swapping.

cal

cal displays a simple calender.

chkdupexe

chkdupexe finds duplicate executables.

---

col

col filters reverse line feeds from input.

---

colcrt

colcrt filters nroff output for CRT previewing.

---

colrm

colrm removes columns from a file.

---

column

column columnates lists.

---

cytune

cytune queries and modifies the interruption threshold for the Cyclades driver.

---

ddate

ddate converts Gregorian dates to Discordian dates.

---

fdformat

fdformat low−level formats a floppy disk.

---

getopt

getops parses command options the same way as the getopt C command.

---

hexdump

hexdump displays specified files, or standard input, in a user specified format (ascii, decimal, hexadecimal, octal).

ipcrm

ipcrm removes a specified resource.

ipcs

ipcs provides information on ipc facilities.

logger

logger makes entries in the system log.

look

look displays lines beginning with a given string.

mcookie

mcookie generates magic cookies for xauth.

namei

namei follows a pathname until a terminal point is found.

rename

rename renames files.

renice

renice alters priority of running processes.

rev

rev reverses lines of a file.

script

script makes typescript of terminal session.

setfdprm

setfdprm sets user–provides floppy disk parameters.

setsid

setsid runs programs in a new session.

setterm

setterm sets terminal attributes.

ul

ul reads a file and translates occurences of underscores to the sequence which indicates underlining for the terminal in use.

whereis

whereis locates a binary, source and manual page for a command.

write

write sends a message to another user.

ramsize

ramsize queries and sets RAM disk size.

rdev

rdev queries and sets image root device, swap device, RAM disk size, or video mode.

readprofile

readprofile reads kernel profiling information.

rootflags

rootflags queries and sets extra information used when mounting root.

swapdev

swapdev queries and sets swap device.

tunelp

tunelp sets various paramters for the lp device.

vidmode

vidmode queries and sets the video mode.

Console−tools

Contents

The Console−tools package contains the charset, chvt, consolechars, deallocvt, dumpkeys, fgconsole, fix_bs_and_del, font2psf, getkeycodes, kbd_mode, loadkeys, loadunimap, mapscrn, mk_modmap, openvt, psfaddtable, psfgettable, psfstriptable, resizecons, saveunimap, screendump, setfont, setkeycodes, setleds, setmetamode, setvesablank, showcfont, showkey, splitfont, unicode_start, unicode_stop, vcstime, vt−is−URF8, writevt

---

Description

charset

charset sets an ACM for use in one of the G0/G1 charsets slots.

---

chvt

chvt changes foreground virtual terminal.

---

codepage

No description available.

---

consolechars

consolechars loads EGA/VGA console screen fonts, screen font maps and/or application−charset maps.

---

deallocvt

deallocvt deallocates unused virtual terminals.

---

dumpkeys

dumpkeys dumps keyboard translation tables.

---

fgconsole

fgconsole prints the number of the active virtual terminal.

---

fix_bs_and_del

No description available.

---

font2psf

No description available.

---

getkeycodes

getkeycodes prints the kernel scancode–to–keycode mapping table.

---

kbd_mode

kbd_mode reports or sets the keyboard mode.

---

loadkeys

loadkeys loads keyboard translation tables.

---

loadunimap

No description available.

---

mapscrn

No description available.

---

mk_modmap

No description available.

---

openvt

openvt starts a program on a new virtual terminal.

---

psfaddtable

psfaddtable adds a Unicode character table to a console font.

---

psfgettable

psfgettable extracts the embedded Unicode character table from a console font.

---

psfstriptable

psfstriptable removes the embedded Unicode character table from a console font.

---

resizecons

resizecons changes the kernel idea of the console size.

---

saveunimap

No description available.

---

screendump

No description available.

---

setfont

No description available.

---

setkeycodes

setkeycodes loads kernel scancode−to−keycode mapping table entries.

---

setleds

setleds sets the keyboard leds.

setmetamode

setmetamode defines the keyboard meta key handling.

setvesablank

No description available.

showcfont

showcfont displays all character in the current screenfont.

showkey

showkey examines the scancodes and keycodes sent by the keyboard.

splitfont

No description available.

unicode_start

unicode_start puts the console in Unicode mode.

unicode_stop

No description available.

vcstime

No description available.

vt−is−UTF8

vt−is−UTF8 checks whether the current virtual terminal is in UTF8− or byte−mode.

---

writevt

No description available.

Console−data

Contents

The console−data package contains the data files that are used and needed by the console−tools package.

Man−pages

Contents

The Man−pages package contains various manual pages that don't come with the packages.

Description

Examples of provided manual pages are the manual pages describing all the C and C++ functions, few important /dev/ files and more.

Appendix B. Resources

Introduction

A list of books, HOWTOs and other documents you might find useful to download or buy follows. This list is just a small list to start with. We hope to be able to expand this list in time as we come across more useful documents or books.

Books

- Linux Network Administrator's Guide published by O'Reilly. ISBN: 1−56502−087−2
- Running Linux published by O'Reilly. ISBN: 1−56592−151−8

HOWTOs and Guides

All of the following HOWTOs can be downloaded from the Linux Documentation Project site at http://www.linuxdoc.org

- Linux Network Administrator's Guide
- Powerup2Bash−HOWTO

Other

- The various man and info pages that come with the packages